



Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise

Software Version 6.7

Admin Guide Guide Version 6.7.010620

Comodo Security Solutions 1255 Broad Street Clifton, NJ 07013

Table of Contents

1	Introduction to Comodo Secure Email Gateway - Enterprise	5
	1.1 Login to the Secure Email Gateway Module	7
	1.2 Get Started	8
	1.2.1 Cloud Customers	8
	1.2.2 On-premise Customers	8
	1.3 The Main Interface	20
2	The Dashboard	21
	2.1 System Usage Graphics	22
	2.2 About Software	23
3	System Configurations	28
	3.1 Services	28
	3.2 License	30
	3.3 Configure System Settings	34
	3.3.1 System General Settings	34
	3.3.2 Cache Settings	35
	3.3.3 Session Settings	35
	3.3.4 GUI Customization	36
	3.3.5 System Backup	36
	3.3.6 System Restore	38
	3.3.7 Log Upload Settings	39
	3.3.8 Postmaster Settings	39
	3.3.9 Web UI SSL	40
	3.3.10 SMTP TLS Settings	41
	3.3.11 Update Database	43
	3.3.12 Syslog Server	44
	3.4 Logs	44
	3.4.1 Log Files	45
	3.4.2 Purge Files	46
	3.5 Tools	47
	3.5.1 Check Connectivity	48
	3.5.2 Clear SMTP Queue	52
	3.6 Session Reports	53
	3.7 System Usage Statistics	53
4	SMTP Configuration	61
	4.1 SMTP (Send E-Mail Protocol) Settings	62
	4.1.1 General Settings	62
	4.1.2 Advanced Settings	63
	4.1.3 Outbound Delivery Queue	65
	4.2 Manage Domains	68
	4.2.1 Manage Domain Names	69
	4.2.2 Manage Domain Routes	75

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide Comodo Creating Trust Online.

4.2.3 Manage Smart Hosts	81
4.2.4 Default Domain Routing	85
4.3 Secure Email Gateway SMTP AUTH Connector	86
4.3.1 SMTP Authentication Settings	86
4.3.2 Block Users	89
4.3.3 Anomaly Detection	95
4.4 LDAP/Local DB/My SQL User Database	96
4.4.1 LDAP Profile	96
4.4.2 Local DB Users	100
4.4.3 My SQL User Database	106
4.5 Greylist	109
4.5.1 Greylist Ignored IP Addresses/Domains	110
4.6 Manage RBL Servers	113
4.7 Disclaimer	116
4.8 SMPT Relay	
4.9 DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM)	118
4.10 Outgoing SMTP Limits	
4.11 Incoming SMTP Limits	130
5 Modules	135
5.1 Anti-spam	135
5.1.1 Anti-spam General Settings	136
5.1.2 Authorized Trainers	138
5.1.3 Advanced Anti-spam Settings	139
5.1.4 Bayesian Training	139
5.1.5 Content Filter	141
5.1.6 Signature Whitelist	143
5.1.7 Attachment Filter	145
5.2 Anti-Virus	145
5.2.1 Anti-Virus General Settings	146
5.2.2 Advanced Anti-Virus Settings	147
5.3 Korumail Reputation Network (KRN)	149
5.4 Anti-Spoofing	151
5.5 SMTP IPS/FW	155
5.5.1 SMTP IPS General Settings	156
5.5.2 Whitelist IP Addresses	158
5.5.3 Blocked IP Addresses	160
5.5.4 Rate Control	163
5.6 Auto Whitelist	164
5.7 Containment System	166
5.8 Data Leak Prevention (DLP)	166
5.9 Attachment Verdict System	167
6 Profile Management	
6.1 Add and Configure a New Profile	170

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide Comodo Creating Trust Online.

6.1.1 Edit a Profile	201
6.1.2 Delete a Profile	202
7 Reports	204
7.1 Mail Logs Report	204
7.2 SMTP Queue Report	213
7.3 Delivery Logs Report	215
7.4 SMTP-AUTH Logs Report	216
7.5 Summary Reports	218
7.6 Domain Reports	224
7.7 Attachment Verdict Reports	228
7.8 Original Mail Request	229
8 Quarantine & Archive	231
8.1 Quarantine & Archive Settings	232
8.1.1 Quarantine & Archive General Settings	232
8.1.2 Email Reports Settings	233
8.1.3 Admin E-mail Reports Settings	235
8.2 Quarantine Logs	237
8.3 Archived Mails	245
About Comodo Security Solutions	254

1 Introduction to Comodo Secure Email Gateway - Enterprise

With unsolicited emails increasing with each passing day, employee mail boxes are flooded with spam messages that contain viruses, phishing links and more. Productivity can decline as individuals waste valuable time sorting genuine mails from junk. If a user opens a malicious attachment or visits a fraudulent website then organizations may find their network compromised or infected.

Comodo Secure Email Gateway (CSEG) is an antispam and threat prevention system that uses advanced filtering technologies, antivirus scanners and content analysis engines to quietly and effectively prevent unsolicited mail from entering your network.

Key Features

- LDAP control
- · Realtime blocking lists
- · Fast integration of MX records
- Reverse DNS
- White / grey / black list configuration
- IP scoring via Korumail reputation network
- Office 365 integration
- Active Directory Integration
- Extensive reports
- Webmail for end-users
- · Containerization of untrusted attachments

Guide Structure

This guide is intended to take you through the installation, configuration and use of Comodo Secure Email Gateway

- Introduction to Secure Email Gateway
 - Logging-in to the Secure Email Gateway
 - Get Started
 - The Main Interface
- The Dashboard
 - System Usage Graphics
 - About Software
- System Configurations
 - Services
 - License
 - Configure System Settings
 - Logs
 - Tools
 - Session Reports
 - System Usage Statistics
- SMTP Configuration

- SMTP (Send E-Mail Protocol) Settings
- Manage Domains
- Secure Email Gateway SMTP AUTH Connector
- LDAP/Local DB/My SQL User Database
- Greylist
- Manage RBL Servers
- Disclaimer
- SMPT Relay
- DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM)
- Outgoing SMTP Limits
- Incoming SMTP Limits
- Modules
 - Anti-spam
 - Anti-Virus
 - Reputation Network (KRN)
 - Anti-Spoofing
 - SMTP IPS/FW
 - Auto Whitelist
 - Containment System
 - Data Leak Prevention (DLP)
 - Attachment Verdict System
- Profile Management
 - Adding and Configuring a New Profile
 - Editing a Profile
 - Deleting a Profile
- Reports
 - Mail Logs Report
 - SMTP Queue Report
 - Delivery Logs Report
 - SMTP-AUTH Logs Report
 - Summary Reports
 - Domain Reports
 - Attachment Verdict Reports
 - Original Mail Request
- Quarantine & Archive
 - Quarantine & Archive General Settings
 - Quarantine Logs
 - Archived Mails

1.1 Login to the Secure Email Gateway Module

- Cloud Customers
- On-premise Customers

Cloud Customers

- Login to your Comodo One / Comodo Dragon / ITarian account (Comodo One portal is shown below as an example)
- Comodo One portal opens at the dashboard.
- · Click 'Applications' then 'Secure Email Gateway Enterprise'

ONE ENTERPRISE		~ 🗄 REPORTS	🐂 stor
	Endpoint Manager	_	^
Help Actions	Patch Management		Ticket
	RMM		
	Device Management		
	Procedures		
	Endpoint Protection		
	Service Desk		
	Secure DNS Filtering		
	Data Loss Prevention		
¢	Secure Email Gateway Enterprise	2	
	Secure Web Gateway		
	All Applications		

Secure Email Gateway Enterprise will open at the dashboard.

On-premise Customers

- You can login to Secure Email Gateway (SEG) after deployment on your premises. Click here for help to deploy SEG on your network.
- Enter the IP address of your instance that was configured during SEG deployment on any web-browser. For example: https://ip-address: 8443
- Default credentials:
 - Username: admin
 - Password: admin

1.2 Get Started

There are two ways to get started with Secure Email Gateway based on the type of customers.

- Cloud Customers
- On-premise Customers

1.2.1 Cloud Customers

After creating your account, the first step is to configure your mail server to work with the Secure Email Gateway service.

Incoming Filter Configuration

- Comodo will set up your antispam instance. After this is done, you will receive a mail that contains your
 account and service URL details. If you think there is a delay in this process, contact Comodo support at
 domesupport@comodo.com
- Change your incoming mail server domain MX records to point to Secure Email Gateway. Mail will be directed to your domain after passing through antispam filtering.
- Enter routing details in 'SMTP' > 'Domains' > 'Routes'. See 'Manage Domains' to find out how to add domain names and their corresponding routing types. If no routing is configured then the default domain routing applies.

Outgoing Filter Configuration

- The outgoing filter checks mail that is sent from your network. You can enable the feature by routing your outgoing traffic to your Secure Email Gateway service URL.
- This service URL is same as used for incoming filtering. This URL is sent to you after Comodo finish
 provisioning your instance. If you have any questions or need assistance, do not hesitate to contact
 domesupport@comodo.com

1.2.2 On-premise Customers

Secure Email Gateway is deployed as a VMware image. Please follow the steps below to install the product.

- 1. Download the virtual machine image:
 - HyperV Template https://download.comodo.com/domeasg/DomeASG_hyperv.rar
 Or
 - ESX Template https://download.comodo.com/domeasg/DomeASG_esx.rar
- 2. Extract the contents of the .rar file using Winrar or 7zip.
- 3. Open the VMware Vsphere client and login to the ESXi server.
- 4. Follow the steps below to deploy SEG (Korumail) to your ESX server:
- Click 'File' > 'Deploy OVF Template'



Enter the URL of the OVF template file, or browse for the file's location on your computer:

🕗 Deploy OVF Template	
Source Select the source location.	
Source OVF Template Details Name and Location Resource Pool Storage Disk Format Ready to Complete	Deploy from a file or URL Trowse Ther a URL to download and install the OVF package from the Internet, or specify a location accessible from your computer, such as a local hard drive, a network share, or a CD/DVD drive.
	<pre> < Back Next > Cancel</pre>

Review the information in the details screen, especially the default username/password, then click 'Next':



Specify a name for the server, or leave it at the default:

🕜 Deploy OVF Template	
Name and Location	
Specify a name and loca	tion for the deployed template
Source	Name:
Name and Location	KoruMAIL Messaging Gateway V6.5
Resource Pool	The name can contain up to 80 characters and it must be unique within the inventory folder.
Storage Disk Format	
Network Mapping	
Ready to Complete	
	Cancel

- Click 'Next.'
- · Select a server on the ESX server with sufficient resources and click 'Next':

Deploy OVF Template Resource Pool Select a resource pool.	
Source OVF Template Details Name and Location Resource Pool Storage Disk Format Network Mapping Ready to Complete	Select the resource pool within which you wish to deploy this template. Resource pools allow hierarchical management of computing resources within a host or duster. Virtual machines and child pools share the resources of their parent pool.
	< Back Next > Cancel

• Choose which storage area your virtual machine image should be copied to. SEG (Korumail) requires 160 Gb of disk space. Click 'Next' when done.

Source OVF Template Details Name and Location Resource Pool Storage Disk Format Network Mapping Ready to Complete	Datastore: Available space (GB): Thick Provision Lazy Z Thick Provision Eager Thin Provision	Vm's 826,8 eroed Zeroed	

plate Details	Select a destination	n storage for the virtua	al machine files	:			
d Location	Name	Drive Type	Capacity	Provisioned	Free	Туре	Thin Prov
ol	Iso's	Non-SSD	924,00 GE	678,73 GB	786,05 GB	VMFS5	Supporte
plete							
	Disable Storage	ge DRS for this virtual	machine				Þ
	Disable Storag Select a datastore	ge DRS for this virtual	machine				•
	Disable Storag Select a datastore Name	ge DRS for this virtual to Drive Type	machine Capacity P	rovisioned	Free	Туре	Thin Provis

• Select 'Thick Provision' as 'Disk Format' and click 'Next':

Select a network with an active internet connection:

•

Source OVF Template Details	Map the networks used in this OVF te	mplate to networks in your inventory	
Name and Location Resource Pool	Source Networks	Destination Networks	
<u>Storage</u> Dick Format	ComodoNetwork	VM Network	144
	Description:		
	Description: The ComodoNetwork network		

Review the setup details then click 'Finish' to begin installation:

Are these the options yn ource IVF Template Details lame and Location lessource Pool torage lisk Format letwork Mapping teady to Complete	When you dick Finish, the deployme Deployment settings: OVF file: Download size: Size on disk: Name: Host/Cluster: Resource Pool: Datastore: Disk provisioning: Network Mapping:	nt task wil be started. C:\Users\ilyas.pala\Downloads\KoruMAIL Messaging Gat 2,4 GB 160,0 GB KoruMAIL Messaging Gateway KoruMAIL.ESX Demo Vm's Thick Provision Lazy Zeroed "ComodoNetwork" to "ComodoNetwork"
	Power on after deployment	< Back Finish Cancel



The deployment process takes a few minutes to complete.



• Select the SEG (Korumail) server, right-click then select 'Power On':

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide Creating Trust Online.

 □ 10. ♥ ♥ ♥ 		Ko	oruMAIL Messaging (ummary Resource A	Gateway
E 🥏 Demo		0	Seneral	
KoruMAIL Me	Power •		Power On	Ctrl+B
	Guest >		Power Off	Ctrl+E
	Snapshot 🕨		Suspend	Ctrl+Z
P	Open Console		Reset	Ctrl+T
D	Edit Settings		Shut Down Guest	Ctrl+D
	Upgrade Virtual Hardware		Restart Guest	Ctrl+R
	Add Permission Ctrl+P		DNS Name:	

Wait for the server to boot-up.



We next need to enter a new hostname, ip, netmask, gateway and DNS information. The following steps explain this process:

1. Login with the default username and password (admin/admin).



2. Enter the command 'change network all' and press 'Enter'.



3. After entering the command, the system will ask for a new hostname, ip, netmask, gateway and DNS.

This option will change network settings Do you want to proceed [y|n] (Default is NO) ? > Y

- Enter the hostname of the machine: korumail.your-domain.com
- Enter the IP address: 192.168.1.10
- Enter the netmask: 255.255.255.0
- Enter the default gateway: 192.168.1.1
- Enter the first nameserver: 8.8.8.8
- Enter the second nameserver: 8.8.4.4

The following changes will be made to network configuration

- IP Address: 19.168.1.10
- Netmask : 255.255.255.0
- Hostname : korumail.yourdomain.com
- Gateway : 192.168.1.1
- Nameserver: 8.8.8.8 , 8.8.4.4
- 4. After confirming the above, type 'y' then press enter. Wait for the device to restart.

 The device will restart. You can then configure the device with the help of the setup wizard. Login at the IP address via a web-browser -

https: // ip-address: 8443 (user: admin pass: admin).

1.3 The Main Interface

The admin console provides easy access to all modules, statistics and configuration screens in Comodo Secure Email Gateway.



Configuration Tabs

The menu on the left allows you to add new domains for filtering, add users, user groups, configure various settings, view reports and more.

- **System:** Configure network settings, add NTP servers, enable or disable services, view license information and more. See 'System Configuration' for more details.
- **SMTP:** Configure SMTP settings, add domains, add new LDAP profiles, create IP/domain greylists, set outgoing limits and more. See 'System Configuration' for more details.
- **Modules:** Enable or disable anti-spam, anti-virus, anti-spoofing, anti-phishing and configure settings for anti-spam training and content filter. See **Modules** for more details.
- **Profile Management:** Configure various settings such as anti-virus, anti-spam, blacklist and more for default incoming and outgoing profile. See '**Profile Management**' for more details.
- **Reports:** View and generate log reports for incoming and outgoing mails and a summary of mails categorized as spam, RBL, phishing and more. See '**Reports**' for more details.
- Quarantine & Archive: Enables to configure Quarantine and Archive settings, view quarantined mail logs and archived mails. See 'Quarantine & Archive' for more details.

Dashboard

After logging-in to the console, the first screen displayed is the 'Dashboard'. It provides at-a-glance view of system usage such as SMTP, Queue mails, network utilization rate, CPU and memory utilization.

- System Messages: Displays error messages or important notifications that might affect the performance of the messaging gateway.
- System Usage Graphics: Provides a graphical representation of the system usage such as SMTP connection rate in hourly, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly basis, utilization of network, CPU, disk and memory. See 'System Usage Graphics' for more details.
- About: Allows you to change your current password, view software details and manage the license. See About Software.
- Run the Setup Wizard: Enables administrators to quickly configure the Secure Email Gateway system.

You can change the theme from the settings interface. Click here to know how.

2 The Dashboard

The dashboard displays statistics about your mail traffic and provides overall system details. You can also view important system messages and update the license.

The dashboard is displayed by default whenever you login to the administrative interface. To switch to 'Dashboard' from a different configuration screen, click the 'Secure Email Gateway' logo at the top left.

ashboard		
item Messages		
for new update details. ystem Message		
tem Usage Graphics	About	
MTP Queue Network Network2 CPU Disk	System Date	13/07/2018 09:27 UTC
Temory	Uptime	36 days 19 hours 15 minutes
	Online Users	1
Hourly Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly	Rule Version	12501
	IP Address	172.31.25.154
SMTP Connection	Spam Signature Last Update Time	Fri Jul 13 09:09:16 UT 2018
600 m	Spam Signature Count	311090
400 m	Virus Signature Last Update Time	Fri Jul 13 05:07:48 UT 2016
200 m	Virus Signature Count	6578617
0 18:20 18:40 14:00		Run The Setup Wi
10.20 10.40 14.00		De

The 'System Messages' displays error messages or important notifications that might affect the performance of the messaging gateway.

You can change the theme from the settings interface. Click here to know how.

Click the following links for more details about other areas in the dashboard:

System Usage Graphics

About Software

2.1 System Usage Graphics

The 'System Usage Graphics' area displays a graphical summary of SMTP connections, the number of queued mails, network utilization rate, CPU utilization rate, disk usage and system memory usage. The tabs in the second row allow you to view summaries on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and yearly basis.



- SMTP: Displays the maximum, average and current SMTP connections to Secure Email Gateway for the selected period.
- Queue: Displays the maximum, average and current emails in queue for the selected period.
- Network: Displays the network utilization rate of the system for the selected period.
- CPU: The maximum, average and current CPU utilization rate for the selected period.
- **Disk:** Displays the system's disk usage ratio for the selected period.
- Memory: Displays the system's memory utilization rate for the selected period.

See the System Usage Statistics section for more details about each of the item.

2.2 About Software

The 'About' section in the 'Dashboard' area displays hardware, software and virus update details.

System Date	23/12/2019 08:03 01C
Uptime	229 days 19 hours 13 minutes
Online Users	1
Rule Version	13575
IP Address	172.31.19.251
Spam Signature Last Update Time	Mon Dec 23 07:30:02 UTC 2019
Spam Signature Count	187863
Virus Signature Last Update Time	Sun Dec 22 10:30:03 UTC 2019
Virus Signature Count	6639252
	Run The Setup Wizard
	Details

Clicking the 'Details' link at the bottom opens another 'About' screen that provides more details:

About			
About System Admin			
Engine Version	Korumail SMTP Filter Engine Korumail 6.7.8		
User Interface Version	Release 6.7.8 - Build 5225ada		
Patch Level	6708		
Spam Signature Last Update Time	Mon Dec 23 08:07:17 UTC 2019		
Spam Signature Count	188079		
Virus Signature Last Update Time	Sun Dec 22 10:30:03 UTC 2019		
Virus Signature Count	6639252		

By default, the 'About' tab will be displayed.

• Click the 'System Admin' tab to view or update administrator details:

bout System	Admin	
	System Admin Nam	e: SEG
	System Admin Surnam	e: Demo
	System Admin Tel. No	L; [
	System Admin E-mail	* ilyas.pala@comodo.cd

- When the SMTP IPS module blocks IP addresses, a list of the blocked IP's will be sent to the e-mail address shown in this interface.
- If the field 'System Admin E-mail' is left blank then an error message will be displayed in 'System Messages' in the dashboard.
- Click 'Save' after completing all fields.

Run Setup Wizard

Allows you to quickly configure protection on a mail server.

To run the setup wizard:

- Click the 'Run the setup wizard' link.
- The setup wizard screen will be displayed. This allows you to choose the SSL certificate you wish to use on your console, as well as system admin details, LDAP profiles, 'Managed Domains', 'Routes' and 'Relay' details.

SMIP Connection 3	
1.0 +	Spam Signature Last Update Time - Mon Dec 23 09 09 53 UTC
0.8	Spare Signature Count 188455
0.6	Virus Signature Last Update Time Sun Dec 22 10:30:03 UTC 3
0.4	Virus Signature Count 6639252
6.2	Run The Setup W
Setup Wizard Certificate Entrance	
Setup Wizard Certificate Entrance	
Setup Wizard Certificate Entrance Use Default Certificate Certificate File (Please just upload file which has format. p12 or .ptc)	ad

An SSL certificate is required to provide secure, HTTPS access to your Secure Email Gateway admin console. The 'Certificate Entrance' screen lets you choose which type of SSL certificate you wish to use. You have two options:

- Upload a certificate you have on file. Ideally, this will be a certificate which you have obtained from a
 trusted certificate authority. Using such a certificate means you will not see browser error messages
 when you access the admin console. Note: The certificate should be for the domain that Comodo has
 setup for your Secure Email Gateway console on the AWS instance. Details of your Secure Email
 Gateway domain will have been sent to your registered email after you signed up for the account.
- Use the default, self-signed certificate. Secure Email Gateway will automatically install a self-signed certificate on your console. Your connection to the console will be just as secure as above, but your

browser will show error messages as the certificate is not signed by a trusted certificate authority. You can bypass these errors and create an exception in your browser to avoid these messages in future.

- You can also upload SSL certificate from the setting interface. Click here for details.
- Click next to enter admin details such as 'System Admin Name', 'System Admin Surname', 'System Admin Tel. No' and 'System Admin E-mail'.

		Choose Language	English	Logout
Setup Wizard				
System Admin				
Default Certificate will be used.				
System Admin Name	Dome AS			
System Admin Surname	Demo			
System Admin Tel. No.	123456789			
System Admin E-mail *	domersa@yopmail.com			
Prev				Next

Click 'Next', to enter 'LDAP' information:

	Choose Language	e 🗸 English	Logout
Setup Wizard			
Add LDAP profile			
LDAP Profile Name		Action	
Default AD		6	
Default OpenLDAP		6	
Default OpenLDAP AUTH		6	
Default AD AUTH		6	
company LDAP		a	
Prev			Next

See the LDAP section for more details.

Click 'Next', to enter details of 'Managed Domains'.

~

Setup	Wizard
-------	--------

Managed Domains

Managed Domain Name	Generate Report	Owner	Action
arda.com		admin	
office365domain.com		admin	
outlook.com		admin	R
pala.com		admin	R
steven.com		admin	
		admin	
		admin	
testcustomer.com		admin	
testdomain.com		admin	
testtest.com		admin	
yahoo.com		admin	
yandex.com		admin	
yeni.com		admin	
yopmail.com		admin	
Prev			Ne

See the Manage Domains section for more details.

• Click 'Next', to enter details of 'Routes'.

Choose Language V English

Choose Language 🗸 English Logout

Setup Wizard

Routes

Managed Domain Name	Routing Type	SMTP Server	Port Number	User Verification	LDAP/DB Profile	Action
-Choose- v	IPv4 ~		25	None v	None	2 /
bilisim.ml	IPv4	217.79.179.102	25	None	-None-	
bulut.ml	IPv4	78.31.65.172	25	None	-None-	
comodo.ordabirbahce.com	IPv4	213.14.70.194	25	None	-None-	
example.com	IPv4	192.168.199.31	25	None	-None-	
steven.com	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	mail.steven.com	25	LDAP	company LDAP	
test.com	LDAP			LDAP	Default OpenLDAP	
testcustomer.com	IPv4	213.168.32.78	25	None	-None-	
yahoo.com	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	smtp.mail.yahoo.com	25	LocalUserDB	LocalUserDB	
yopmail.com	MX RECORD			MySQL		
		44 K	30.00			
Prev						Next

See the **Routes** section for more details.

• Click 'Next', to enter details of 'Relay'.



See the Relay section for more details.

3 System Configurations

The 'System' link in the left menu allows you to configure important parameters after initial configuration

	Services				Choose Language 🗸 English Logou
> System	Services	-			Ð
	Service	Status	Start / Stop	Restart	
+ SMTP	Delivery Agent		۲	55	
Modules	SMTP Service		۲	55	Legend
Profile Management	SMTP Submission Service		۲	53	🔺 Not Available
Reports	Main Filtering Engine		۲	55	Service is running
+ Quarantine & Archive	Anti-spam Engine		۲	55	Start service
	Syslogd		۲	65	Stop service Stop service
	Snmpd Service	-	۲	65	
	Scheduler Service			55	

- Services: Allows you to start or stop various services such as delivery agent, SMTP, Snmpd, scheduler and more. See 'Services' for more details.
- License: View and update Secure Email Gateway licenses from this interface. See 'License' for more details.
- Settings: Configure various system settings such as Cache, Session, Backup and more. See 'Configuring System Settings' for more details.
- Logs: View and download mail log files and configure how long the system should retain mail log records, archived mails and quarantined mails. See 'Logs' for more details.
- Tools: Allows admin users to check connectivity such as SMTP, Ping, Nslookup, Telnet as well as clear SMTP queue. See 'Tools' for more details.
- Session Reports: Enables you to view the details of last login and last activity performed on the user interface. See 'Session Reports' for more details
- Statistics: View the graphical summary of system usage. See 'System Usage Statistics' for more details.

3.1 Services

The 'Services' screen shows the current status of various Secure Email Gateway services. You can stop or restart a service and also shutdown or reboot Secure Email Gateway.

• To view and configure Secure Email Gateway services, click the 'System' tab on the left then 'Services':

vices	······································			_
Service	Status	Start / Stop	Restart	Û
Delivery Agent	-	۲	55	
SMTP Service	-	۲	55	Legend
SMTP Submission Service	-	۲	55	🛕 Not Available
Main Filtering Engine	-	۲	55	Service is running
Anti-spam Engine	•	۲	55	Start service
Syslogd	-	۲	65	Stop service Stop service
Snmpd Service	-	۲	55	
Scheduler Service		۲	55	

The icons in the 'Legend' screen provides the status details of the services.

	Description of the Services
Column Header	Description
Delivery Agent	The service forwards the emails processed by Secure Email Gateway to target email server.
SMTP Service	The service that filters emails on hosted domain names on Secure Email Gateway. This service accepts incoming e-mail connections listening to port 25 of SMTP. The SMTP service filters the emails per the settings configured by the administrator (Reverse DNS, RBL, SRN, MX control the White List, Black List, Grey List, etc.) in SMTP level first and then the filtered emails are passed to the next stage - Secure Email Gateway Main Engine for spam and virus analysis.
Submission SMTP Service	Submission port (587), is a mail delivery port as port 25 (SMTP) but it requires additional authentication. If you do not have an account on this server, you cannot send an e-mail.
Main Filtering Engine	The emails that are filtered by 'SMTP Service' are passed to the main filtering engine software that checks for spam and virus in the mails. This module performs the actions specified by administrator such as rejecting, quarantining the infected email or saving the email to another register area or address. If e-mail is required to be sent to recipient then it is forwarded by the Secure Email Gateway Delivery Agent.
Anti-spam Engine	Secure Email Gateway engines scans emails and specifies spam scores controlling thousands of spam signatures such as header and bayesian-based content filtering. This scores are used to define an e-mail as spam.
Syslogd	The daemon service that stores system logs in rsyslog format.
Snmpd Service	It is a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent which binds to port and acts on SNMP management application's requests and sends the requested information to the requester.
Scheduler Service	This service organizes the programs that runs periodically. This feature in Secure Email Gateway creates periodic reports and graphics about system usage.

To start or stop a service, click on the buttons beside it.



- To restart a service, click on the 55 button under the 'Restart' column. If the service is running, it will stop and restart again. If the service is stopped, then it will restart.
- To shutdown the Secure Email Gateway, click on the Web button.
- To reboot the Secure Email Gateway, click on the W button.

3.2 License

The 'License' screen allows you to view current license details as well as to create a license requests and install a new license. Secure Email Gateway licenses can be purchased by logging into your Comodo account at https://accounts.comodo.com/account/login

Licenses are priced according to the number of users and license period.

 To view and purchase a new Secure Email Gateway license, click the 'System' tab on the left menu then 'License'

Lic	cens	ie			
Lice	enses	License Activation	End User License A	greement	
			Automatic Renewal	No	
			Users	100	
			Current Users Count		
			Activation Date	2017-10-12	00:00:00
		Lic	ense Expiration Date	2020-04-26	23:59:59
			Remaining Days	125	
		Curren	t CAM Activation Key	(10.04) (10.05)	and work while infinite a state of
			Status	VALID	
			CI	ick here to get	CAM license key

From here you can:

• View the details of your current license

- Purchase a license
- Activate your license
- View the End User License Agreement (EULA)

View details of current license

• Click the 'Licenses' tab

Licer	ise		
License	License Activation	End User License A	greement
		Automatic Renewal	No
		Users	100
		Current Users Count	
		Activation Date	2017-10-12 00:00:00
	Lie	cense Expiration Date	2020-04-26 23:59:59
		Remaining Days	125
	Curren	t CAM Activation Key	anipality can ave all the field and
		Status	VALID
		Cl	ick here to get CAM license key

	License - Table of Column Descriptions
Column Header	Description
Automatic Renewal	Indicates whether automatic license renewal is enabled.
Users	Maximum quantity of users that can be enrolled
Current User Count	Number of users currently using the product license
Activation Date	Date when the license was activated.
License Expiration Date	Date when the license expires.
Remaining Days	Number of days left before the license expires.
Current CAM Activation Key	Details of license key
Status	Indicates whether the license is valid or expired.

Purchase a license

• Click the 'Click here to get CAM license key' in the 'Licenses' tab or in the 'License Activation' tab.

Licens	se		
Licenses	License Activation	End User License Agreement	
	CAM Activation Key *		
	New License	<u>Click here to get CAM license key</u>	
		Save	

You will be taken to Comodo Accounts Manager (CAM) login page at https://accounts.comodo.com/account/login

 Login to your CAM account or create a new one and complete the Secure Email Gateway license purchase procedure.

A license key will be sent to your email address that was provided at the time of CAM sign-up.

Activate your license

Click the 'License Activation' tab.

Licens	e	n an	
Licenses	License Activation	End User License Agreement	
		AM Activation Key *	
		New License Click here to get CAM license key	
		Save	

- Copy and paste the license key that was sent to your email address from Comodo in the 'CAM Activation Key' field.
- Click 'Save'.

The license key will be checked and if validated, the 'Licenses' interface will be updated accordingly.

End User License Agreement (EULA)

• Click the 'End User License Agreement' tab.

			Choose Language	V English Logout
Licens	se in the second se			
Licenses	License Activation	End User License Agreement		
END USER	LICENSE AGREEMENT	COMODO DOME ANTISPAM		
THIS AGREE	EMENT CONTAINS A BIN G ITS TERMS AND COND	IDING ARBITRATION CLAUSE. PLE DITIONS	ASE READ THIS AGREEME	NT CAREFULLY BEFORE
IMPORTANT COMODO'S PROVIDED ACCEPT* BI YOU AGREE SUBSCRIBE	- PLEASE READ THESI DOME ANTISPAM, INCLI THEREIN, EXCEPT AS E ELOW, YOU ACKNOWLE TO BE BOUND BY ITS 1 E TO OR USE THE SERV	E TERMS CAREFULLY BEFORE US UDING ALL OF THE ELECTRONIC XPRESSLY STATED HEREIN. BY U DGE THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS / TERMS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO 'ICES, OR CLICK ON "I ACCEPT".	ING THE PRODUCT. THE " FILES, DOCUMENTATION, A SING THE PRODUCT, OR E GREEMENT, THAT YOU UN THE TERMS HEREIN, DO	PRODUCT" MEANS ND SOFTWARE IY CLICKING ON "I IDERSTAND IT, AND THAT NOT USE THE PRODUCT,
DAMAGES () DATA, OR PI CONTRACT USE OF THI	INCLUDING, BUT NOT L ROFITS; OR BUSINESS I ; STRICT LIABILITY, OR T IS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF /	IMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SI INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUS 'ORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE O ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF	JESTITUTE GOODS OK SE ED AND ON ANY THEORY (OR OTHERWISE) ARISING II SUCH DAMAGE.	RVICES, EUSS OF USE, DF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN N ANY WAY OUT OF THE
ACCEPTAN	CE			
10 EULA – Con	nodo Dome Antispam (2	0161031)		
BY CLICKIN THAT IT WIL SUBSCRIBE	IG "I ACCEPT" BELOW, S L BE BOUND BY AND C ER DOES NOT AGREE T	UBSCRIBER AGREES THAT IT HAS OMPLY WITH ALL OF ITS TERMS. D O THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMEI	READ AND UNDERSTAND O NOT CLICK THE "I ACCE NT.)S THIS AGREEMENT AND PT° BUTTON IF
Download A	SPDF			

• Read the EULA fully.

You can also download the EULA from the screen by clicking the 'Download As PDF' link at the bottom.

• To download the PDF, click 'Download Ad PDF' link at the bottom left corner of the interface.



The pdf will be downloaded.

3.3 Configure System Settings

The 'Settings' interface lets you configure all aspects of Secure Email Gateway.

• To open the interface, click the 'System' tab and then the 'Settings' sub tab.

0								Choose I	anguage 💌	English	Logout
SECURE EMAIL	Settin	gs									
	General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS	
 System 	Database	Update	Syslog								
► SMTP											
+ Modules			F	ermit Processing User Da	ata 🖲 Perm	it 🔍 Anonyn	nous 🔍 None				
Profile Management	Enabling	this option	to send some	e spam messages to our	abs for analy	sing is certa	inly advised.				
+ Reports	Informati recipient	Information that is sent to Comodo AntiSpam Lab includes spam score, queue id, engine decision, receive time, thresholds, remote ip, host name, recipient and sender addresses, mail headers, message id and system processing details. Mail body is sent only mails that is determined as a span								p, host name, r ned as a spam.	eal
Quarantine & Archive										5	ave

Click the following links for more details:

- General
- Cache
- Session
- GUI Customization
- Backup
- Restore
- Log Upload
- Postmaster
- Web UI SSL Certificate
- SMTP TLS
- Update Database
- Syslog

3.3.1 System General Settings

The 'General' settings tab lets you enable or disable automatic upload of selected spam messages to Comodo for analysis.

• To open the interface, click 'System' on the left then 'Settings' > 'General'.

Settin	gs									
General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS	
Database	Update	Syslog								
Enabling	this option	P to send some	ermit Processing User Da spam messages to our	ata Perm labs for analy	iit [©] Anonyr ysing is certa	nous 🔍 None inly advised.				
Information recipient a	on that is s and sender	ent to Comod r addresses, n	lo AntiSpam Lab includes nail headers, message id	spam score and system	, queue id, er processing d	ngine decision, re etails. Mail body	eceive time, thres is sent only mails	holds, remote ip that is determin	o, host name, re ned as a spam. Sa	ave

• Permit Processing User Data:

- Permit Selected spam messages will be uploaded to Comodo labs for analysis.
- Anonymous Selected spam messages will be uploaded anonymously, without data which links them to your company or users.
- None Spam messages will not be uploaded to Comodo.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

3.3.2 Cache Settings

The 'Cache' settings tab allow administrators to set the cache expire time for Greylist IP addresses, SMTP Auth logs and LDAP.

• To open the 'Cache' settings interface, click the 'System' tab on the left menu, then 'Settings' and 'Cache' tab.

Settings				
General Cache Session GUI Custom	ization Backup Restore	Log Upload Postmaste	r Web UI SSL SMTP TLS	
Database Update Syslog	······································			
Greylist IP Cache expire time	720 minutes	Clear Now		
SMTP-AUTH logs expire time	7 day	Clear Now		
LDAP Cache		Clear Now		
	Save			

- **Greylist IP Cache expire time:** Secure Email Gateway greylists IP addresses from which emails are received for the first time and rejects it. If the sender is using a proper mail server, it automatically resends the email. The greylisted IP becomes whitelisted and email is not rejected. If the mail is from a spam source, then normally it will not resend mails. Enter the time for which the greylisted IPs should be cached. If within this time emails are resent from greylisted IPs, they are whitelisted. After the entered time, the greylisted IPs are deleted from the greylist.
- **SMTP AUTH logs expire time:** The end user authentication log details of SMTP clients are cached for the entered days and after that they are deleted.
- LDAP Cache: LDAP authentication details are cached and Secure Email Gateway does not query the LDAP server.
- Click the 'Clear Now' beside an item to clear the cache immediately.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

3.3.3 Session Settings

The 'Session' tab lets you configure the session timeout period and to limit the number of times an admin can log into the console before the password has to be changed.

• To open the interface, click 'System' on the left then 'Settings' > 'Session'.

	Settin	gs									
ſ	General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS	
	Database	Update	Syslog								
				Session Timeout Du	ration: 3)	minute	15			
				Logi	n Limit: 1	00					
					-	Sav	/e				

- Session Timeout Duration: Determines how many minutes of inactivity should be allowed before all users are automatically logged out.
- Login Limit: Enter the maximum amount of users that can login to the portal at the same time.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

3.3.4 GUI Customization

The 'GUI Customization' tab lets you customize the look and feel of the console according to your preferences. You can also change the name and the logo which is displayed in the interface.

• To open the interface, click 'System' on the left then 'Settings' > 'GUI Customization'

Settin	gs									
General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS	
Database	Update	Syslog			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		······		••••••••	
lag		ant he great	C	Logo	me Antispam	a dafault chaosa				
LUG	J SIZE IIIUSI	not be great	pixels and format must	be PNG.	opioad Cos	e default choose	-			
				Theme Re	dmond 🔹					
					Sav	/e				

- Company: Type the name of the company to be shown in the interface.
- Logo: Upload your company logo. The logo will be shown in the interface to all users. Images should be in .png format and no larger than 150 px L x 100 px H.
 - Click 'Upload', choose file then again click 'Upload'
 - To remove the logo, click the 'Clear' link.
 - Click the 'Save' button to upload the logo.
- **Theme:** The 'Themes' drop-down allows you to choose the colors and appearance of the GUI as you prefer (*Default = Redmond Theme*).
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

3.3.5 System Backup

The 'Backup' tab allows you store copies of all configurations and logs. You can also automate the backup process by scheduling the backup dates and time. You can restore your antispam configuration from your backup at any time.

• To open the 'Backup' settings interface, click the 'System' tab on the left menu, then 'Settings' and 'Backup' tab.
Instant Backup

• To take an instant backup, enter the password, confirm it and click the 'Create Backup' button.

The system will backup the files and the backup download link will be displayed.

Session Syslog	GUI Customization Backup Pa Backup Pa	Backup Restore Log Upload Postmaster Web UI SSL SMTP TLS issword
Syslog	Backup Pa Backup Pa	issword
	Backup Pa Backup Pa	issword ·····
	Backup Pa	issword
		Create Backup Cancel
		Parkun
		Click here to download backup
	Enable Auto I	Backup 🔲
		Save
		Enable Auto

• 'Click here to download backup' - Click this link to save the backup.

The file is downloaded to your system. The 'Backup' file can be restored later from the 'Restore' tab.

Scheduled Backup

You can automate the backup process by scheduling the jobs.

• To schedule a backup job, select the 'Enable Auto Backup' check box.

Settin	gs												
General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS				
Database	Update	Syslog		*******	<u>1. sente trans.</u>								
			Backup Pas	sword									
			Backup Pas	sword									
					Create Backup Cancel								
			Enable Auto E	Backup 🗹	2								
				Host 🛽	10.108.51.100								
				User 🧵	hn								
			Pas	sword	J								
			Pas	sword	d ••••••								
			Remot	te Path									
			Backu	p type	TP 🔻								
			Days to b	ackup	ip 🗷 Monday 🗇 Tuesday 🔍 Wednesday 🔍 Thursday 🔍 Friday 💭 Saturday 💭 Sunday								
			Backu	p hour	7:00 🔻								
					Sav	/e							

- Host: The name or IP of the system where the data should be backed up.
- User: The user name of the system
- **Password:** Enter the password to access the system
- Remote Path: Enter the remote path of the system including the folder name. Leaving the field blank
 means the backup will be uploaded to the default FTP folder.
- Backup type: Select the backup type from the drop-down. Currently only FTP option is available.

- Days to backup: Schedule the backup day(s) from the options.
- **Backup hour:** Select the hour when the scheduled backup should run on the selected backup day(s)
- Click 'Save'. The scheduled job will be saved. To change the schedule or the backup location, edit the settings accordingly and click 'Save'.

3.3.6 System Restore

•

The 'Restore' feature allows you to revert your Secure Email Gateway configuration and logs to a previous system state. The console will need to be rebooted in order to complete a restore operation.

To open the 'Restore' settings interface, click the 'System' tab on the left menu, then 'Settings' and 'Restore' tab

Settin	gs									
General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS	
Database	Update	Syslog								
			Back	up File: U	pload					
			Backup Pas	sword:						
					Rest	ore				

- Backup Password Enter the password that you provided while backing up.
- Click the 'Upload' button
- · Click 'Choose File', navigate to the location and click 'Upload'

File Upload - Google Chrome	-	\times
demo-das.cdome.net:8443/fileUploader.xhtml		
File Upload		
Choose File No file chosen		
Upload		Close
Installed Files :		
korumail_backup-2019-12-23-11_1.sgb, 5373448 KB		

Click 'Restore'

Settin	ngs											
General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS			
Databas	Update	Syslog										
	Backup File: Upload Backup Password.											
			Backup Pas	sword:								
					Rest	ore						

The console has to be rebooted to complete the restore operation.



• Click 'OK' to confirm.

3.3.7 Log Upload Settings

The 'Log Upload' tab allows you to configure the automated upload of various types of Secure Email Gateway logs.

Click the 'System' tab and then the 'Statistics' sub tab.

Settin	gs											
General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS			
Database	Update	Syslog					sarahan dént	e fotos de la como	*******	ang di kanala pan		
			1	Host *								
				User *								
			Passy	word *								
			Passv	word *								
			Remote	path *								
			Uploa	d type	TP V							
			Days to up	load * E	Monday	Tuesday 🗐 Wed	nesday 🗐 Thurse	day 🗏 Friday 🛙	Saturday 🗐	Sunday		
			Upload	hour *	▼ 00:00							
					Sa	ve						

- Host: The name or IP of the system where the logs should be uploaded.
- User: The user name of the system
- Password: Enter the password to access the system
- **Remote Path:** Enter the remote path of the system including the folder name. Leaving the field blank means the logs will be uploaded to the default FTP folder.
- **Upload type:** Select the upload type from the drop-down. Currently only FTP option is available.
- Days to upload: Schedule the upload day(s) from the options.
- Upload hour: Select the hour when the scheduled upload should run on the selected upload day(s)
- Click 'Save'. The scheduled job will be saved. To change the schedule or the upload location, edit the settings accordingly and click the 'Save' button.

3.3.8 Postmaster Settings

It is a statutory requirement to set a postmaster address to which email errors will be directed for an SMTP domain. Postmaster addresses are commonly targeted by spammers to send unsolicited messages. Similarly, spammers also use the mailer-daemon route to flood users with spam messages. Secure Email Gateway allow administrators to forward these to other addresses and /or reject emails sent to these addresses.

Click System' on the left then 'Settings' > 'Postmaster'

S	ettin	gs										
G	eneral	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS		
D	atabase (Update	Syslog									
Γ	Postmaster Forwarding Address											
	MAILER-DAEMON Forwarding Address Discard incoming mails											
						Sav	e					

- **Postmaster Forwarding Address:** Enter the forwarding address to which the email to postmaster are directed.
- **MAILER-DAEMON Forwarding Address:** Enter the forwarding address to which the Mailer Daemon notifications are to be directed.
- Discard incoming mails: Select the check box if the mails to the forwarded address is to be rejected.
- · Click 'Save'.

3.3.9 Web UI SSL

An SSL certificate is required to provide secure, HTTPS access to your Secure Email Gateway admin console. You can choose to upload an SSL certificate from this interface or in the **SEG dashboard**. The latest certificate that you uploaded from either of the interfaces is active.

• Click System' on the left then 'Settings' > 'Postmaster'

Settings						
General Cache Session GUI Customization	Backup Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	SMTP TLS	
Database Update						
Certificate Entrance						
Use Default Certif	cate 🗐					
Certificate File (Please just upload file which has format .pl	2 or pfx) Upload					
Pass	vord					
						Save

- Use Default Certificate This is an SEG self-signed certificate. Secure Email Gateway will
 automatically install a self-signed certificate on your console. Your connection to the console will be just
 as secure as above, but your browser will show error messages as the certificate is not signed by a
 trusted certificate authority. You can bypass these errors and create an exception in your browser to
 avoid these messages in future.
- Certificate File Upload a certificate you have on file. Ideally, this will be a certificate which you have
 obtained from a trusted certificate authority. Using such a certificate means you will not see browser
 error messages when you access the admin console. Note: The certificate should be for the domain
 that Comodo has setup for your Secure Email Gateway console on the AWS instance. Details of your
 Secure Email Gateway domain will have been sent to your registered email after you signed up for the
 account.
 - Click 'Upload'

File Upload	
Choose File No file chosen	
Upload	Close
Installed Files :	

- Click 'Choose File' then select the cert file and click 'Upload'
- Enter the certificate password in the SEG interface
- Click 'Save'

3.3.10 SMTP TLS Settings

- Transport layer security (TLS) is a cryptographic protocol which provides encryption and privacy for email traffic.
- You need to install a certificate on your mail server in order to enable TLS.
- The 'SMTP TLS' area lets you create a new certificate or upload an existing certificate.

Open the 'SMTP TLS' settings interface

• Click 'System' > 'Settings' > 'SMTP TLS' tab.

Settings					
General Cache Session	GUI Customization	Backup Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL
SMTP TLS Database Update	Syslog				ina na sa na sa
Create certificate Upload certificate					
	Enable SMTP TLS	€			
Private Key(Please Just upload file which has format pem)					
Import					
		Save			

Enable SMTP TLS – Select to activate SMTP TLS

Create a certificate

• Click the 'Create certificate' link and enter the mandatory details:

:	Settin	gs								
	General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	
ſ	SMTP TLS	Databa	ase Update	Syslog						
<	Create cert	tificate								
			4	Enable SMTP TLS	¥					
		The numb	per of days of	f validity of certificate *	360					
				Country *	•					
				State *						
				City *						
				Department *						
			Hos	t Name or IP Address *						
				E-mail *						
				Created Date						
						Save				

- Validity Specify the term length of the certificate in days. Note certificates for public-facing websites have a maximum term length of 720 days.
- Country Select the two-character code for your country.
- State Two character code of the state/province in which your organization is located.
- City/Locality The name of the city in which your organization is located
- E-mail Your contact email address
- Department Name of the department
- Host or IP address Type the domain, hostname or IP address of the server you want to secure
- Click 'Save' to create the certificate.

Upload a certificate

Click 'Upload certificate' then click 'Import'

General	Cache	Session	GUI Custo	omization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Pos
SMTP TLS	Databa	ase Update	Syslog					
Create cert	ificate	8						
opioud cer			Enabl	e SMTP TLS	•			
Private Key(Please jus upload file which has forma .pem		>						
	T				s	ave		
	Ipload ave Cl	ose						

- · Click the upload button to browse for the certificate you wish to import
- Click 'Save'.

3.3.11 Update Database

Secure Email Gateway updates virus and spam databases once per day. If required, the databases can be updated instantly from 'Database Update' tab.

Click 'System' > 'Settings' > 'Database Update'.

etting	gs								
eneral	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	
MTP TLS	Databa	ise Update	Syslog		an sa ang sa				<u> - Fristander († 1997)</u> 1997 - Fristander († 1997)
			Virus Update	Update					
			Spam Update	Update					
	etting ieneral MTP TLS	ettings eneral Cache MTP TLS Databa	ettings eneral Cache Session MTP TLS Database Update	ettings eneral Cache Session GUI Customization MTP TLS Database Update Syslog Virus Update Spam Update	ettings eneral Cache Session GUI Customization Backup MTP TLS Database Update Syslog Virus Update Update Spam Update Update	ettings eneral Cache Session GUI Customization Backup Restore MTP TLS Database Update Syslog Virus Update Update Spam Update Update	ettings eneral Cache Session GUI Customization Backup Restore Log Upload MTP TLS Database Update Syslog Virus Update Update Spam Update Update	ettings eneral Cache Session GUI Customization Backup Restore Log Upload Postmaster MTP TLS Database Update Syslog Virus Update Update Spam Update Update	ettings eneral Cache Session GUI Customization Backup Restore Log Upload Postmaster Web UI SSL MTP TLS Database Update Syslog Virus Update Update Spam Update Update

- Virus Update: Click to update the virus database manually
- Spam Update: Click to update the spam database manually

3.3.12 Syslog Server

Secure Email Gateway has the ability to forward logs pertaining to various operations and configuration changes to a remote Syslog server.

Click 'System' in the left menu then 'Settings' > 'Syslog' tab

;	Setting	gs	la here her			al a hal a hal				
	General	Cache	Session	GUI Customization	Backup	Restore	Log Upload	Postmaster	Web UI SSL	
	SMTP TLS	Databa	ase Update	Syslog	unisjunje gevoleti		ann an tao ta bha ann a			armanal mala
				Enable Syslog Serve	r 🗹					
			Hos	t Name or IP Address						
				Port	514					
				Level	Emerg 🛙	🗏 Alert 🗐 Cr	it 🗎 Error 🗐 W	arn 🗐 Notice 🗐	Info 🗐 Debug	1
					2	Save				

- Enable Syslog Server: Enable this to store logs on your remote server. Enter your Syslog server details in the fields provided:
- Host Name or IP Address: Enter the host name or the IP address of the remote logging server to which the logs should be passed.
- Port: Enter the port number through which the server receives the logs. Default is 514.
- Level: Specify the types of logs by severity level that you want to forward to the remote logging server.
- Click 'Save'

3.4 Logs

- Secure Email Gateway stores log files for various activities and connections in the local database and uploads the logs to the server as specified under 'System' > 'Settings' > 'Log Upload'.
- Administrators can download logs from the database through the 'Logs' interface. The logs interface also allows administrators to delete unwanted logs. Logged details include mail subject, sender domain and receiver domain and more.
- Click 'System' > 'Log Files' to open this interface

						Choose Language	ŀ	English	Logou
-0	gs								
Log I	Files Purge Files								
Total	Log size: 1.7M Refresh								
<u>SMT</u>	P Filtering SMTP Service SMTF	Submission E	ngine <u>E-mail</u>	Deliv	erv				
	File Name	File Date	File Size		Action				
	smtpproxy.log	Jul 9 08:01	0		Downloa	ad			
	smtpproxy.log-20180708	Jul 8 17:20	254		Downloa	ad			
	smtpproxy.log-20180711	Jul 11 15:03	259		Downloa	ad			
	smtpproxy.log-20180712	Jul 12 13:12	2.3K		Downloa	ad			
			3.0						
De	elete								

The 'Logs' interface has the following tabs:

- Log Files
- Purge Files

3.4.1 Log Files

The 'Log Files' tab contains logs of different activities and connection attempts. These include:

- SMTP Filtering
- SMTP Services
- SMTP Submission
- Engine Activities
- E-mail Delivery

Admins can download or delete logs as required.

Tip: You can also view real-time logs in the 'Reports' interface. See Reports for more details.

Open the log files interface

• Click 'System' > 'Logs' > 'Log Files' in the left-hand menu

					CI	hoose Language	English	Logout
Lo	gs							
Log	Files Purge Files							
Tota	Log size: 1.7M Refresh							
SMT	P Filtering SMTP Service SMTF	Submission E	ngine <u>E-mail</u>	Deliv	erv	_		
	File Name	File Date	File Size		Action			
	smtpproxy.log	Jul 9 08:01	0		Download			
	smtpproxy.log-20180708	Jul 8 17:20	254		Download			
	smtpproxy.log-20180711	Jul 11 15:03	259		Download			
	smtpproxy.log-20180712	Jul 12 13:12	2.3K		Download			
			3.0					
De	elete							

- The interface lists all available log files along with the size and date
- Use the links above the table to view a specific category of logs
- Click 'Refresh' to reload the list with the latest logs.

	L	og Files - Table of Column Descriptions
Column Header		Description
File Name	Log label	
File Date	Date and t	ime the file was created
File Size	Size of the	log file
Actions		Delete selected logs.
	Download	Save a copy of a log.

3.4.2 Purge Files

The 'Purge Files' interface allows you to configure the time limit for preserving log files, archived mails and quarantine mails. Items that are older than the period specified in this interface will be automatically removed.

- · Click 'System' on the left then 'Logs'
- Click the 'Purge Files' tab

		Choose Lang	juage 🗸 English	Logout
Logs				
Log Files Purge Files				
Delete older mail log records in database (Days)	0			
Delete older archived mails (Days)	0			
Delete older quarantine mails (Days)	0			
	Delete			

- Delete older mail log records in database (Days) Specify the number of days to store the log files. The log files older than the days specified here will be automatically deleted.
- Delete older archived mails (Days) Specify the number of days for which the quarantined mails are to be retained in the local database. Mails older than the days specified here, will be automatically deleted.
- Delete older quarantine mails (Days) Specify the number of days for which the quarantined mails are to be
 preserved in the local database for review by the administrators. Mails older than the days specified here,
 will be automatically deleted.
- Click 'Delete' to run the remove operation.

3.5 Tools

Secure Email Gateway has built-in tools to quickly check the connectivity to the mail servers and clients and to clear the mails in the SMTP delivery queue.

• Click 'System' on the left then 'Tools'

		Choose Language V English
Tools		
Connectivity Checks Queue		
SMTP connectivity	Test	
Ping	Test	
Nslookup	Test	
Telnet	Test	

The tools interface has two tabs:

- Connectivity Checks
- SMTP Queue

3.5.1 Check Connectivity

The 'Connectivity Checks' tab allows you to test Secure Email Gateway's connectivity to external mail servers and clients

- Click 'System' on the left then 'Tools'
- Click 'Connectivity Checks' tab if not already open

		Choose Language	✓ English Logout
Tools			ge v English Logout
Connectivity Checks Queue			
SMTP connectivity	Test		
Ping	Test		
Nslookup	Test		
Telnet	Test		

You can check for the following:

- Connectivity to a remote SMTP server
- Connectivity to a remote host
- Name server lookup for a remote host or a mail server
- Telnet connectivity for a remote host

Check connection to a SMTP server

• Click 'Test' beside 'SMTP connectivity' from the 'Connectivity Checks' interface.

	Choose Language V English
Tools	
Connectivity Checks Queue	
SMTP connecti	/it. Test
P	ng Test
Natook	up Test
Tel	net Test
Check remote SMTP Connectivity	×
Host Name or IP Address *	
Port	25
Sender*	
Recipient -	
Result	

The 'Check remote SMTP Connectivity' interface will appear.

- Enter the details of the external or remote mail server as given below:
 - Host Name or IP Address The hostname or IP address of the remote SMTP server
 - Port The port used by the server for SMTP connections. This depends on whether or not the server uses SSL for SMTP connections (Default = 25)
 - Sender A valid email address at the local SMTP server to send a test mail to the remote server for testing
 - Recipient A valid email address at the remote SMTP server to which the test email needs to be sent
- Click 'Send'

.

Secure Email Gateway will send a test email to check the connectivity and display the results in the 'Result' field.

Check connectivity to a remote host

• Click 'Test' beside 'Ping' from the 'Connectivity Checks' interface.

								100000
					Choose La	anguage	 English 	Logo
Teele								
10015								
Connectivity Checks	Queue							
connectivity checks	Queue							
	S	MTP connectivity	Test					
		Ping	Test)				
		Nsloekup	Test					
	/	Teinet	Test					
ing 📕								×
			_					
Host Name or IP Address								
Resu	It							
			Send	Close				

The 'Ping' interface will appear.

- Enter the hostname or IP address of the remote host to check whether it can be reached by Secure Email Gateway
- Click 'Send'

Secure Email Gateway will ping the remote host and display the results in the 'Result' field.

Lookup name server for a remote host

Click 'Test' beside 'Nslookup' from the 'Connectivity Checks' interface.

			Choos	e Language	English	Logo
Tools						
Connectivity Checks Queue						
	SMTP connectivity	Test				
	Ping	Test				
	Nslookup	Test				
	Telnet	Test				
lookup						
lookup Host Name o	or IP Address *					

The 'Nslookup' interface will appear.

- · Enter the hostname or IP address of the remote host to check the domain name associated with it
- Click 'Send'

Secure Email Gateway will lookup the name server to identify the domain name associated with the IP address or the hostname and display the results in the 'Result' field.

Check Telnet connectivity to a remote host

Click 'Test' beside 'Telnet' from the 'Connectivity Checks' interface.

Tools						Choose L	anguage	✓ Er	nglish	Logo	-U
Connectivity Checks	Queue			2 			ownets			N	
	SMTP connecti	rity T	est								1
	Pi	ng T	est								1
	Nslook	up 🔽	est								1
	Tel	net T	est	>							1
net						1					
Н	lost Name or IP Address *										Contraction of the
	Port	25		share UTTD/4 0							Contraction of the local section of the local secti
	Result										
				Send	Clo	ose					Call Control of Call

The 'Telnet' interface will appear.

- Enter the hostname or IP address of the remote host to check whether it is connecting through Telnet protocol
- Enter the port use by the remote host for Telnet connections (Default = 25).
- Secure Email Gateway send a request 'GET /login.xhtml HTTP/1.0' to the remote host to check the connectivity, If you wish to send a custom request, edit the same in the 'Request' field.
- Click 'Send'

Secure Email Gateway will send the request to the remote host for checking the Telnet connectivity and display the results in the 'Result' field.

3.5.2 Clear SMTP Queue

The 'Queue' tab under the 'Tools' interface allows admins to remove mails that have been queued for SMTP forwarding.

Clear the SMTP queue

• Click the 'System' tab from the left, then 'Tools' and 'Queue' tab.

	Choose Language V English
Tools	
Connectivity Checks Queue	
Clean SMTP queue	Clear

• Click the Clear button beside CLEAN SMTP queue.

3.6 Session Reports

- Click the 'System' tab from the left, then click 'Session Reports'.
- Session reports show all currently active logins.
- Details include the IP address of the user, the last login time and the details of last activity performed on the user interface.

	<u> </u>	Choose Language 🔽 English 📕 Logout
Session Repo	rts	
IP Address	Creation Date	Last Accessed Time
182.74.23.22	16/07/2018 10:50:24	16/07/2018 11:27:20
Copyright© 2006-20 Dome Antispam name a	18 Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved. Ind logo are trademarks of Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. Release: 6.7.1.8972932	

3.7 System Usage Statistics

Secure Email Gateway displays SMTP connection statistics, mail statistics and utilization statistics of hardware and software resources like network, CPU, hard disks and system memory as graphs in the 'Statistics' interface.

Click 'System' on the left then 'Statistics'

							Choose Langu	iage 🗸	English	
atisti	cs									
utic undate in	terrush Di	ashlad	Pofrach N	low						
nic update in		sabled V	Refrestin	IOW						
em Usage (Graphics									
		Notwork	Notwork2	CDU	Diek	Homony				
IIP Q	ueue	Network	Network2	CPU	DISK	memory				
			T	T.u. i	1					
Hourly	Daily	Weekly	Monthly	Yearly						
		CMTD	Connoctio	n.		2				
800 m 1	•	SMIP	Connectio			DTOO				
600 m						-/ 1				
400 m						0 130				
400 m						ELIK				
200 m						ER				
0 +	13:20	1	13:40	14:00						
Con	ns Max	: 793 m	Avg: 8	33 m Cur:	0	m				
and states and states		the second s	The second of the second s	100 C 100	and the second se					

The administrator can set the update interval for the statistics or can instantly update the statistics to view the realtime usage graphs.

• To set the update interval, choose the interval from the 'Automatic update interval' drop-down.

utomatic upd	late interval:	Disabled V 1 minute	Refresh Now		
System Us	age Graphic	5 minutes 10 minutes			
SMTP	Queue	Disabled Network	Network2	CPU	Disk

Click 'Refresh Now' to instantly update the statistics

The 'System Usage Graphics' area displays the connection and usage statistics graphs under the following tabs:

- SMTP: A graphical representation of the number of SMTP connections between Secure Email Gateway and different mail servers during the selected time period. Shows data for both for incoming and outgoing mails.
- Queue: Displays the graphical representation of number of mails that were in queue for processing and delivering to the mail servers, during the selected time period.
- Network and Network2: Shows network utilization statistics through various network interfaces for the selected period.
- CPU: Shows the load on the Secure Email Gateway CPU over the selected period.
- **Disk:** Shows disk access levels over the selected period.

• Memory: Shows system memory usage over the selected period.

SMTP

The 'SMTP' tab displays the numbers of SMTP connections made to different mail servers over the period chosen from the sub tabs:

- Hourly Shows the log of connections for the past one hour
- Daily Shows the log of connections for the past 24 hours
- · Weekly Shows the log of connections for the past seven days
- Monthly Shows the log of connections for the past four weeks
- · Yearly Shows the log of connections for the past twelve months

The numbers of maximum and average connections within the selected period and the current number of connections are displayed below the graph.

Queue

Secure Email Gateway receives all the emails and analyzes them for spam filtering, virus scanning, content filtering and so on, before delivering it to the mail servers. The 'Queue' tab displays the log of mails that were under processing and not delivered to the mail servers during the selected period.

	Choose Language 🗸 English 📕 Lo
atistics	
tic update interval: Disabled V Refresh Now	
em Usage Graphics	
MTP Queue Network Network2 CPU Disk Mem	nory
Hourly Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly	
SMTP Queue	
500 m t	
400 m	
300 m	
200 m	
100 m	
0 Jun Jul Aug Sen Oct Nov Dec Jan Eeb Mar Ann May	
IQ Cur: 0 Avg: 0 Max: 0 ■ NP Cur: 0 Avg: 0 Max: 0	

You can choose the time period for which you wish to see the logs from the sub tabs:

- · Hourly Shows the log of number of mails in queue for the past one hour
- · Daily Shows the log of number of mails in queue for the past 24 hours
- · Weekly Shows the log of number of mails in queue for the past seven days
- · Monthly Shows the log of number of mails in queue for the past four weeks
- · Yearly Shows the log of number of mails in queue for the past twelve months

Network and Network2

The Network tabs display the log of network resource utilization through the respective interface, for the period chosen from the sub-tabs.

atistics				
atic update interval: Disabled 🧹	Refresh Now			
em Ilsage Graphics				
on beage or aprile			 	
MTP Queue Network	letwork2 CPU Disk	Memory		
	our of the block			
Hourly Daily Weekly	Monthly Yearly			
النبين بالمحد بلمدار	anting int #0	2		
Network Util	zation int #0	RUTO		
7.0 k				
6.0 k				
5.0 k	the second s	- 81		
4.0 K		e e		
204		- <u>-</u>		
10k		- 9		
0.0		→		
13:20 13	:40 14:00			
In In		Out		
In: 51.92 k	0ut: 51.92	2 k		
Ava To: 40 18 k	Avg Out:40.18	3 k		
AV9 11. 40.10 K				

- · Hourly Shows the log of network usage for the past one hour
- Daily Shows the log of network usage for the past 24 hours
- Weekly Shows the log of network usage for the past seven days
- Monthly Shows the log of network usage for the past four weeks
- Yearly Shows the log of network usage for the past twelve months

The incoming and outgoing traffic are represented with different colors in the graph.

- Green Incoming traffic
- Blue Outgoing traffic

The current incoming/outgoing traffic and the average incoming and outgoing traffic for the selected period of time are indicated below the graph.

CPU

The CPU tab displays the log of load on Secure Email Gateway CPU, for the period chosen from the sub-tabs.

							Choose L	anguage	✓ Eng	glish 📕	Lo
tatisti	cs										
natic update int	terval: Disa	abled \checkmark	Refresh No	w							
tem Usage G	Graphics										
	ueue N	letwork	Network2	CPU	Disk	Memory	/				
Hourly	Daily	Weekly	Monthly	Yearly							
		CPU Ut	tilization			20					
120						TOOL /					
100					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	TOBI					
60						OFTI					
20						NER .					
0-	13:20		13:40	14:00	,						
	у с	ur: 5%	Avg: 3	3%	Max: 5	2					
Dus		LICE OF	Ava: 0	7%	Max: 07	9					

- Hourly Shows the CPU usage for the past one hour
- Daily Shows the CPU usage for the past 24 hours
- · Weekly Shows the CPU usage for the past seven days
- · Monthly Shows the CPU usage for the past four weeks
- Yearly Shows the CPU usage for the past twelve months

The processes that are responsible for CPU usage are indicated with different colors.

- Green Idle, CPU was not used by any of the processes
 - Red System processes

The table below the graph shows the current, average and maximum load of the CPU for the selected period from the respective processes.

Disk

The 'Disk' tab displays a graphical representation of the log of the ratio of disk usage with respect to total disk space in Secure Email Gateway, for the period chosen from the sub-tabs.

atistics tic update interval: Disabled Refresh Now m Usage Graphics TTP Queue Network Network2 CPU Disk Memory Hourly Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly Disk Usage Ratio		
tic update intervat Disabled Refresh Now TP Queue Network Network2 CPU Disk Memory Hourly Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly Disk Usage Ratio		
ITP Queue Network Network2 CPU Disk Memory Hourly Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly Disk Usage Ratio		
TTP Queue Network Network2 CPU Disk Memory Hourly Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly Disk Usage Ratio 1000000000000000000000000000000000000		
Hourly Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly Disk Usage Ratio		
Disk Usage Ratio		
20 15		
15		
10		
5		
0		
system Cur: 16% Avg: 16% Max: 16%		
mail Cur: 0% Avg: 0% Max: 0% Total Capacity mail: system:32G		

- Hourly Shows the disk usage for the past one hour
- Daily Shows the disk usage for the past 24 hours
- Weekly Shows the disk usage for the past seven days
- Monthly Shows the disk usage for the past four weeks
- · Yearly Shows the disk usage for the past twelve months

The disk usage by different types of data are indicated with different colors.

- Yellow Space occupied by system configuration
- Magenta Space occupied by mail archive

The table below the graph shows the current, average and maximum disk usages for the selected period.

Memory

The 'Memory' tab displays a graphical representation of the usage of system memory of Secure Email Gateway, for the period chosen from the sub-tabs.

	Choose Language 🔽 English 📕 Logo
Statistics	
matic update interval: Disabled V Refresh Now	
stem Usage Graphics	
SMTP Queue Network Network2 CPU Disk M	lemory
Hourty Daily Weakly Monthly Yaarty	
Houry Daily Weekly Monthly Tearly	
Memory Utilization 3.0 G	
2.0 6	
1.0 G	
0.0 13:20 13:40 14:00	
Used Max: 2.6 G Avg: 2.6 G Cur: 2.6 G Total Mem: 7821 MB	
Total Mem: 7821 MB	

- Hourly Shows the memory usage for the past one hour
- Daily Shows the memory usage for the past 24 hours
- · Weekly Shows the memory usage for the past seven days
- · Monthly Shows the memory usage for the past four weeks
- · Yearly Shows the memory usage for the past twelve months

The maximum, average and current memory usage statistics are indicated below the graph.

4 SMTP Configuration

The 'SMTP' area allows you to configure settings for outgoing mails. This includes settings such as maximum file size, denial-of-service protection, outgoing/incoming limits and more.

	SMTP Settings
	General Settings Advanced Settings Outbound Delivery Queue
System	SMTP server banner text Comodo Secure Email Gateway
SMTP	Maximum acceptable mail size * 20 MB
SMTP Settings	Activate DoS protection *
Domains	Enable SMTP submission port * 🕑
SMTP-AUTH	Enable SPF 0 - Disabled 🔹 🗐 Only for hosted
LDAP/DB	Recommended value: 3 domains
Greylist	Enable IP Based Geolocation Restriction
RBL	Save
Disclaimer	
Relay	Copyright@ 2006-2019 Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.
DKIM (Dome Antispam name and logo are trademarks of Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. Release: 6.7.9.5060ec
Outgoing Limits	
Incoming Limits	
Modules	
Profile Management	
Reports	
Quarantine & Archive	

Click the following links for more details:

- SMTP Settings
- Manage Domains
- Secure Email Gateway SMTP AUTH Connector
- LDAP/Local DB/My SQL User Database
- Greylist
- Managing RBL Servers
- Disclaimer
- SMPT Relay
- DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM)
- Outgoing SMTP Limits
- Incoming SMTP Limits

4.1 SMTP (Send E-Mail Protocol) Settings

The 'SMTP' settings area allows you to configure the SMTP connection response message, activate DoS protection, and configure the maximum number of processes that the filtering engine can use. The area also lets you set the number of mails that can be queued and sent at a time for a particular domain.

Open the SMTP screen:

• Click 'SMTP' > 'SMTP Settings' in the left-hand menu

GATEWAY	SMIPSettings	
	General Settings Advanced Settings Outbound Delivery Queue	
System	SMTP server banner text Comodo Secure Email Gate	way
SMIT	Maximum acceptable mail size * 20 MB	
SMTP Settings	Activate DoS protection * 🗷	
Domains	Enable SMTP submission port * 🗑	
SMTP-AUTH LDAP/DB	Enable SPF 0 - Disabled Recommended value: 3 domains	Only for hosted
Greylist	Enable IP Based Geolocation Restriction	
RBL	Save	
Disclaimer		
Relay	Copyright© 2006-2019 Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.	
DKIM	Release: 6.7.9.5060ec	-
Incoming Limits		
Modules		
Profile Management		
Reports		
Quarantine & Archive		

Click the following links for more details:

- General Settings
- Advanced Settings
- Outbound Delivery Queue

4.1.1 General Settings

'General Settings' allow you to configure banner text, the maximum size of outgoing mails, denial of service protection and more.

- Click the 'SMTP' > 'SMTP Settings' on the left menu
- Click the 'General Settings' tab if not already open

General Settings Advanced Settings	Outb	ound Delivery Queue
SMTP server banne	er text	Comodo Secure Email Gateway
Maximum acceptable mail	size *	20 MB
Activate DoS protec	ction *	0
Enable SMTP submission	port *	8
Enab Recommended va	ole SPF alue: 3	0 - Disabled Only for hosted domains
Enable IP Based Geolocation Restr	riction	

	SMTP Settings - General Settings Table of Parameters
Parameter	Description
SMTP server banner text	The welcome message displayed on the SMTP server when connection to Secure Email Gateway port 25 is established.
Maximum acceptable mail size (MB)	The maximum permitted size of a single email + attachments. The default value is 20 MB.
Activate DoS protection	A DoS (Denial of Service) attack occurs when a malicious sender attempts to overload your mail server by bombarding it with unsolicited mail. DoS protection implements limits to help ensure your servers are not stopped or brought to a standstill by such attacks.
Enable SMTP submission port	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway will not accept outgoing messages from unauthenticated sources, thus helping to protect your network and users from spam emails.
Enable SPF	SPF (Sender Policy Framework) is a security standard to block the forgery of sender address. SPF values
	1. Just add received-SPF header
	2. Return temporary failure in DNS query error
	3. If SPF result fails (ban) then reject it (recommended)
	4. If SPF result is softfail then reject it
	5. If SPF result is neutral then reject it
	6. If SPF result is not passed then reject it
	You can disable SPF by selecting '0' from the list. If the check box 'Only for hosted domains' is selected, then the SPF check will be performed for outgoing mails for domains that are hosted in the network.

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

4.1.2 Advanced Settings

• 'Advanced Settings' let you configure the max/min number of processors that the filtering engine should

use. More processors will improve the performance of Secure Email Gateway

· You can also specify the maximum number of recipients per SMTP transaction.

Open the advanced settings screen

- Click 'SMTP' >'SMTP Settings' in the left menu
- Click the 'Advanced Settings' tab

eneral Settings Advanced Settings Out	bound Delivery Queue
Minimum number of filter processors *	10
Maximum number of filter processors *	50
Maximum number of recipients per SMTF transaction *	0
Incoming SMTP session timeout in seconds *	60
RBL Timeout (second) *	2
Early talker drop time (second)	0
Reject invalid addresses	Ø
Queue life time (hour) *	24
Enable tarpitting	
Tarpit count	0
Tarpit delay (second)	0
Maximum number of SMTP sessions * Maximum: 500	200
Maximum number of concurrent mail delivery *	500
Main Filter engine log level	Info 🔻

	SMTP Settings - Advanced Settings Table of Parameters
Parameter	Description
Minimum number of filter processors	Minimum amount of filter processes that the filtering engine should use. Filter processors are threads used to scan and handle mail.
	Fewer processors = Lower resource overhead / slower performance
Maximum number of filter processors	Maximum amount of filter processes that the filtering engine should use. Filter processors are threads used to scan and handle mail.
	More processors = Higher resource overhead / better performance
Maximum number of recipients per SMTP transaction	Maximum number of recipients for each incoming SMTP request that comes to Secure Email Gateway.
Incoming SMTP session timeout (seconds)	Timeout duration of each SMTP session.

RBL Timeout (seconds)	If this time is exceeded, the RBL query is canceled and next filter is applied to the e- mail.
Early talker drop time (seconds)	The SMTP server has a waiting time before sending a first greeting message after which the client replys with a HELO or a EHLO command. On receiving this (premature) message before the server sends greetings, then the client could be serving spam. The waiting time of SMTP server to send a greeting message is called Early talker drop time.
Reject invalid addresses	If enabled, outgoing mails with invalid address will be rejected
Queue life time (hour)	Enter the number of hours that a mail can be queued for delivery before it is bounced.
Enable tarpitting	Tarpitting helps thwart spammers by slowing the transmission of bulk emails. If a spammer sends an email to several recipients on your server during one SMTP session, enabling this feature will slow down the communication. Spammers may stop sending emails to your server if the response to their requests is very slow.
Tarpit count	Tarpitting will become active if the number of recipients exceeds the Tarpit count.
Tarpit delay (second)	The number of seconds that Tarpitting will delay the transmission response
Maximum number of SMTP sessions	Maximum number of concurrent SMTP sessions.
Maximum number of concurrent mail delivery	Maximum number of concurrent messages that can be sent by SMTP server.
Main Filter engine log level	Select the level of main filtering engine event that should be logged. Selecting 'Notice' will log all the levels.

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

4.1.3 Outbound Delivery Queue

- Click 'SMTP' > 'SMTP Settings' in the left menu then the 'Outbound Delivery Queue' tab
- The 'Outbound Delivery Queue' lets you restrict how many emails can be delivered simultaneously from a source domain.
- Secure Email Gateway has three preset queues with 50, 100 and 150 concurrent mails. You can add multiple domains to any of these queues.
- You can also change the concurrent mail numbers if required
- Queuing mail ensures only a certain number of mails are delivered at once, preventing outbound spam and protecting your mail server from overload.

General Settings	Advanced Setting	15	Outbound Delivery Q	ueue		
Queue 1						
c	oncurrency Number	50		Save)	
- 17-11 - 1952 (Marine - 1973)	Domai	n		Act	ion	
vahoo.com					3	
				Export	<u>Import</u>	<u>Delet</u>
Queue 2						
с	concurrency Number	100		Save)	
	Domai	n		Act	ion	
aol.com				5	2	
				Export	<u>Import</u>	<u>Delet</u>
Queue 3						
с	oncurrency Number	150		Save)	
- Anna - Stationara - Station	Domai	n		Act	ion	
att.net				5	2	

The interface has three preset delivery queue numbers that can be configured according to your organizational needs. The 'Concurrency Number' for each of the queue can be changed.

• To set the number of emails that can be sent at a time, enter the number in the 'Concurrency Number' field and click the 'Save' button.

SMTP

		í.	-	
General Settings	Advanced Settings	Outbound Delivery	Queue	
Successfully Save	ed.			
Queue 1				
Concu	rrency Number 350	Sav	e	
	Domain			Action
				•
yahoo.com				
amazon.com				
		Export	Import	<u>Delete a</u>

• Add a domain to a queue by typing the domain name in the field then clicking the '+' button

Successfully Saved. Queue 1				
Concurrency Number	350	Sav	/e	
	Domain			Action
hotmail				•
yahoo.com				
amazon.com				
		<u>Export</u>	<u>Import</u>	<u>Delete al</u>

- To remove a domain from the list, click the Solution beside it.
- To remove all domains from the list, click the 'Delete all' link and confirm the removal in the 'Confirmation Dialog'.
- To save the list of domains in a 'Queue', click the 'Export' link and save it to your system.
- To import a list of domains, click the 'Import' link. The 'Import' dialog will be displayed:

Import		
- Upload		
Save Close		

• Click the 'Upload' button, browse to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'. The file will be added.

nport	
🕂 Upload	× Clear All
C:\fakepath\Queue-1.txt Done	<u>Clear</u>
Save Close	

- Repeat the process to add more files.
- To remove a file, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the added files, click the 'Clear All' button at the top right.
- To import the list of domains from the files, click the 'Save' button.

4.2 Manage Domains

- The 'Manage Domains' area lets you add, edit and view the domains you wish to filter.
- You can also configure routes and domain 'Smart Hosts', whereby mail is routed to an intermediate/relay server instead of direct to the recipient server.

Open the domains screen

Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' in the left-menu

GATEWAY	Dom	anis		-								
System	Manage	d Domains	Routes	Sma	art Hosts			-10				
SMTP	Total: 3	domain(s) <u>Add</u>										
SMTP Settings Domains	All None	Managed	Domain Na	ame	Genera	te Report	Owner	Act	tion			
SMTP-AUTH						8		Ę	3			
LDAP/DB	8	bulut.ml					admin	3				
Greylist		ilyaspala.ml					admin	X				
RBL		korumail.tk					admin	i.Y	2			
Disclaimer				e		22						
Relay DKIM Outgoing Limits	Export	Delete										
Incoming Limits		Copyriş Dome Antis	ght© 2006-2011 spam name an	9 Como d logo ar Rele	do Security S re trademark sase: 6.7.9.5	olutions, Inc. s of Comodo 3 060ec	All rights res Security Soli	arved	l. , Inc.			
Profile Management												
leports												
Juarantine & Archive												

Click the following the links for more details:

- Manage Domain Names
- Manage Domain Routes
- Manage Smart Hosts
- Default Domain Routing

4.2.1 Manage Domain Names

The 'Managed Domains' tab lets you view, add and edit your protected domains.

Open the managed domains screen:

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' in the left menu
- Click the 'Managed Domains' tab if not already open

manay	ed Domains Routes Sn	nart Hosts			
Total:	3 domain(s)				
🗿 <u>Bull</u>	k Add				
<u>All</u> None	Managed Domain Name	Generate Report	Owner	Act	tion
				C	•
	bulut.ml		admin		
	ilyaspala.ml		admin	1	
	korumail.tk		admin	Ż	

Managed Domains - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header	Description					
Managed Domain Name	The FQDN of the protected domain					
Generate Report	 Will create a report containing email statistics for the domain. The report will be available in 'Domain Reports' Click 'Reports' > 'Domain Reports' to open this interface. 					
Owner	The name of the admin who added the domain.					
Actions		 Type the domain you wish to add in the field under the 'Managed Domain Name' column header. Next, click this button to add the domain to the list. 				
	R	Delete a domain.				
	Ĩ	Edit domain details.				

The interface allows you to:

- Add a domain name
- Add multiple domain names
- Edit a domain owner
- Delete domain names
- Export domain names

Add a domain name

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' in the left menu
- Click the 'Managed Domains' tab
- Enter the domain name in the field under 'Managed Domain Name' column

Domains Routes Smart Hosts Managed Domains Total: 4 domain(s) Bulk Add Managed Domain Name Generate Report Owner Action mail.comodo.net \Box comodo.ordabirbahce.com \checkmark X admin \square \checkmark X mail.postmanllc.net admin X \square Π mail.vega.com admin \checkmark X www.mail.yahoo.com admin

- Select 'Generate Report' if you want to record email statistics for the domain in 'Domain Reports'. Click 'Reports' > 'Domain Reports' to view this interface.
- Click the 🖄 button under the 'Action' column.

The domain will be added and the next step is to define route for the added domain. If left undefined, then the default route will apply for the domain.



See 'Managing Routes' on how to add routes.

Add multiple domain names

The most significant feature of this menu is when you add the domain name you can route the domain name at the

same time. For doing this lines must be written in Domain Name; Target IP Address; Port; LDAP name format. If target IP address is left blank no routing is done for this domain name. If port field left blank, port 25 is used as default.

· Click the 'Bulk Add' link in the 'Managed Domains' screen

Managed Don	nains	Routes	Smart	t Hosts	
Total: 5 domai	n(s)				
Total: 5 domai	n(s)				
Total: 5 domai	n(s)				

The 'Bulk Add' screen will be displayed.

Add domains
Bulk Add
You must write one domain for each line (max. 500 entries).
example1.com example2.com: 10.0.0.1;25 example3.com; ;2525;ldapName
Add <u>Cancel</u>
Format: Domain; Destination IP; Port; LDAP Profile Name example1.com example2.com; 10.0.0.1;25 example3.com; ;2525;ldapName
- Enter the domain names each per line.
- You can also define routes, port number and LDAP profile name here for the domains. The items should be separated by a semicolon as shown in the screen.
- Click 'Add'.

The domains will be added and the next step is to define routes for the added domains if not defined while entering the domain names. If left undefined, then the default route will apply for the domains.

Managed Domains	Routes	Smart Hosts			
Successfully Save You must define re Successfully Save	ed. outing for new ed.	added domain(s).		
2 domains were a Total: 7 domain(s)	added success	added domain(s fully.	, .		
2 domains were a Total: 7 domain(s) 3 Bulk Add All None Manag	added successi ged Domain N	added domain(s fully.). rate Report	Owner	Actio

Edit a domain owner

When you add a domain name, your user name will be displayed in the screen under the 'Owner' column header.

• To change the name of domain owner, click the *state* button beside the 'Owner' name.

The 'Edit Managed Domain' screen will be displayed.

	Choose Language 🗸 English Logout			
Edit Managed Domain				
Managed Domain Name	arda.com			
Owner	admin 🗸			
	Save Cancel			

- · Select the name that you want to change as the owner from the 'Owner' drop-down
- Click 'Save'

Delete domain names

- To delete domain names one at a time, click the 🖄 button under the 'Action' column header and confirm the deletion in 'Confirmation' dialog.
- To delete multiple domain names, select the check boxes beside them and click 'Delete' at the bottom.

				Choose Langua	age 🗸	Engl	ish		Logout
	Domains								
ſ	Managed Domains Routes Smart Hosts								
	Filter:		Filte	er! Clear Total: 2	21 domain(s)			
	O Bulk /	Add							
	<u>All</u> None	Managed	Domain Name	Generate Report	Owner	Act	ion		
						0	•		
	A	arda.com			admin]	
	\square	bilisim.ml			admin	1			
	\square	bulut.ml			admin				
	\square	yandex.com	n		admin	1			
	\square	yeni.com			admin	1			
	yopmail.com				admin				
	v		8 8 8 N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	5 55					
	Export	Delete							

Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion of the selected domains.



Export the domain names to a file

• Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen

<u>All</u> lone	Managed Domain Name	Generate Report	Owner	Ac	tior
				Į	•
	comodo.ordabirbahce.com		admin	ľ	
	mail.comodo.net		admin	2	
	mail.postmanllc.net		admin		
	mail.vega.com		admin	Ľ	
	www.gmail.com		admin		
	www.google.com		admin		
	www.mail.yahoo.com		admin	2	3

Click 'OK' to download and save the domains list as a text file to your system.

Opening manageddomains.txt	×
You have chosen to open:	
manageddomains.txt	
which is: Text Document (142 bytes)	
from: https://34.203.148.26:8443	
What should Firefox do with this file?	
Open with Notepad (default)	
Save File	
Do this <u>a</u> utomatically for files like this from now on.	
OK Cance	I

4.2.2 Manage Domain Routes

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' > 'Routes' to open this interface.
- A domain route is the path that a domain should use to deliver mail after it has been filtered.
- If no route is defined then the default domain route is applied. See 'Default Domain Routing' for more info.
 - Note. You must already have added a domain before you can configure its route.
 - Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' > 'Managed Domains' to add new domains. Click here if you need more help.

nage	ed Domains Routes S	Smart Hosts						
<u>All</u> one	Managed Domain Name	Routing Type	SMTP Server	Port Number	User Verification	LDAP/DB Profile	Act	jo
	-Choose- v	IPv4 ~		25	None ~	None		1
	bilisim.ml	IPv4	217.79.179.102	25	None	-None-		1
	bulut.ml	IPv4	78.31.65.172	25	None	-None-		1
	comodo.ordabirbahce.com	IPv4	213.14.70.194	25	None	-None-		f
	example.com	IPv4	192.168.199.31	25	None	-None-		1
	steven.com	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	mail.steven.com	25	LDAP	company LDAP		í
	test.com	LDAP			LDAP	Default OpenLDAP		
	testcustomer.com	IPv4	213.168.32.78	25	None	-None-		í
	yahoo.com	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	smtp.mail.yahoo.com	25	LocalUserDB	LocalUserDB		1
	yopmail.com	MX RECORD			MySQL			6

IPV4 :192.166.199.31(IPV4 address only) IPV6 or HOSTNAME :smtp.mail.example.com (IPV6 address or Hostname only) MX RECORD: (Mail Exchanger Record, no need to input any server address) LDAP :(Lightweight Directory Access Protocol, no need to input any server address)

Export Delete

Domain Route - Table of Column Descriptions				
Column Header	Description			
Managed Domain Name	he FQDN of the protected domain			
Routing Type	 Select the routing type that should be used to send mail to the SMTP server. The options available are: IPv4 IPv6 Hostname MX Record LDAP 			
SMTP Server	Enter the IP address or the SMTP server name			
Port Number	The port number to which the Secure Email Gateway should forward the mail			
User Verification	 The type of user authentication that Secure Email Gateway should use before forwarding the mails. The options available are: None Local User DB My SQL LDAP 			
LDAP/DB Profile	This field will be populated depending on the type of 'User Verification' selected. If 'LDAP' is chosen, then the option to choose the LDAP type will be available.			

Action	•	After completing all routing details, click this button to save the domain route.
	/	Check connectivity between Secure Email Gateway and the SMTP server.
		Delete a domain route from the list.
	Ĩ	Edit a domain route.

The interface allows you to:

- Configure domain route for the added domains
- Edit a domain route
- Delete domain routes
- Export domain routes

Configure a domain route

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' > 'Routes'
- Click the 'Choose' drop-down
- Select the **domain** for which you want to configure a route.
 - Click the 'Managed Domains' tab if you still need to add a domain

					Choose Language	V English		Log
Dom	ains							
Manage	d Domains Routes	Smart Hosts						
<u>All</u> None	Managed Domain Name	Routing Type	SMTP Server	Port Number	User Verification	LDAP/DB Profile	Act	ion
	-Choose-	/ IPv4 v		25	None 🗸	None		1
	-Choose-	IPv4	217.79.179.102	25	None	-None-		1
	arda.com	IPv4	78.31.65.172	25	None	-None-		1
	gmail.com	IPv4	213.14.70.194	25	None	-None-		12
	mydomain.com	IPv4	192.168.199.31	25	None	-None-		2
	office365domain.com	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	mail.steven.com	25	LDAP	company LDAP		12
	outlook.com	LDAP			LDAP	Default OpenLDAP		8
	pala.com	IPv4	213.168.32.78	25	None	-None-		
	test/domain.com	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	smtp.mail.yahoo.com	25	LocalUserDB	LocalUserDB		8
	testest.com	MX RECORD			MySQL			R
	yandex.com	0	66 8 30					
	yeni.com							

• Select the routing type that should be used to send mail to the SMTP server.

					Choose Language	English		Logo
Don	Domains							
Mana	ged Domains Routes	Smart Hosts						
<u>All</u> Non	Managed Domain Name	Routing Type	SMTP Server	Port Number	User Verification	LDAP/DB Profile	Act	ion
	-Choose- v	IPv4 🗸		25	None 🗸	None		1
	bilisim.ml	IPv4	217.79.179.102	25	None	-None-		8
	bulut.ml	IPv4	78.31.65.172	25	None	-None-		X
	comodo.ordabirbahce.com	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	213.14.70.194	25	None	-None-		1
	example.com	MX RECORD	192.168.199.31	25	None	-None-		1
	steven.com	LDAP	mail.steven.com	25	LDAP	company LDAP		8
	test.com	LDAP			LDAP	Default OpenLDAP		8

- 'SMTP Server' field Enter the hostname or IP of the SMTP server to which SEG should forward mails after filtering
 - Enter the server port number in the next column
- 'User verification' drop-down Choose the type of authentication that Secure Email Gateway should use to verify the recipient.
 - The options available are: 'None', 'Local User DB', 'My SQL' and 'LDAP'.
 - SEG will only forward mails after successful verification. Unless you choose 'None', of course.
 - The verification database can be configured in the LDAP/DB section. Click 'SMTP' > 'LDAP/DB' to open this interface.
- Depending on the 'User Verification' type chosen, the 'LDAP/DB Profile' column will be populated. If 'LDAP' is chosen as 'User Verification' then the LDAP profiles added in LDAP/DB section will be displayed from the drop-down. Select the LDAP profile from the options.

rver	Port Number	User Verification	LDA
	25	LDAP 🗸	Defa
	25	None LocalUserDB	-None
		MySQL	-None
>> >> >> >> >> >> >> >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>		LDAP	

- To check the connectivity between Secure Email Gateway and the configured remote server, click the

 button under the 'Action' column header. The connection will be checked and the result displayed at the top.
- To add a domain route to the list, click the İ button under the 'Action' column header.

The configured domain route will be added for the domain and displayed in the list.

Edit a domain route

Click the 🦉 button under the 'Action' column header for the domain route that you want to edit.

The 'Edit domain route' screen will be displayed.

	Choose Language 🗸 English Logout
Edit domain route	
Domain	comodo.ordabirbahce.com
Routing Type	IPv4 V
SMTP Server	213.14.70.194
Port Number	25
User Verification	None ~
LDAP/DB Profile	None
	Save Cancel

- Edit the required parameters. This is similar to the method explained in the 'Add' section.
- Click the 'Save' button to apply your changes.

Delete domain routes

- To delete domain routes one at a time, click the 🔯 button under the 'Action' column header and confirm the deletion in the 'Confirmation' dialog.
- To delete multiple domain routes, select the check boxes beside them and click the 'Delete' button at the bottom.

ll Manag ne N	ed Domain Iame	Routing Type	SMTP Server	Port Number	User Verification	LDAP/DB Profile	Act	ior
-Choose-		V IPv4	2	25	None ~	None		1
bilisim.ml		IPv4	217.79.179.102	25	None	-None-		R
bulut.ml		IPv4	78.31.65.172	25	None	-None-		
comodo.or	dabirbahce.co	om IPv4	213.14.70.194	25	None	-None-		
] example.co	m	IPv4	192.168.199.31	25	None	-None-		
steven.com	1	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	mail.steven.com	25	LDAP	company LDAP		
est.com		LDAP			LDAP	Default OpenLDAP		
testcustom	er.com	IPv4	213.168.32.78	25	None	-None-		2
] yzhoo.com		IPv6 or HOSTNAME	smtp.mail.yahoo.com	25	LocalUserDB	LocalUserDB		
yopmail.co	m	MX RECORD			MySQL			
			KK 62 30 30 30 30 30					
p server examples 192 168 199 310	; IPV4 address (anly)		nd				

Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion of the selected domain routes

Choose Language

Are you sure want	to delete selec	ted domain(s)?
	ОК	Cancel

To export the domain routes to a file

Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen

Dom	ains				
Manage	ed Domains Routes	Smart Hosts			
<u>All</u> <u>None</u>	Managed Domain Name	Routing Type	SMTP Server	Port Number	
	-Choose- v	IPv4 🗸		25	None
\checkmark	bilisim.ml	IPv4	217.79.179.102	25	None
	bulut.ml	IPv6 or HOSTNAME	78.31.65.172	25	None
	comodo.ordabirbahce.com		213.14.70.194	25	None
	example.com	IPv4	192.168.199.31	25	None
	yopmail.com	MX RECORD			MySQL
			«« « » »		
Smtp se IPV4 :19 IPV6 or MX REC LDAP :(Export	rver examples; 02.168.199.31(IPV4 address only HOSTNAME :smtp.mail.example ORD :(Mail Exchanger Record, r Lightweight Directory Access Pr Delete	/) com (IPV6 address or Hostn to need to input any server ad rotocol, no need to input any s	ame only) Idress) server address)		

Click 'OK' to download and save the domain routes list as a text file to your system.

Opening domainroutes.txt	\times
You have chosen to open:	
domainroutes.txt	
which is: Text Document (186 bytes)	
from: https://34.203.148.26:8443	
What should Firefox do with this file?	
O Open with Notepad (default)	~
Save File	
Do this <u>a</u> utomatically for files like this from now o	n.
ОК	Cancel

4.2.3 Manage Smart Hosts

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' > 'Smart Hosts' to open the smart hosts screen.
- Smart hosts are intermediate servers that receive mail and, after applying their own policy, forward them to
 end user mail boxes.
- Smart hosts require sender-authentication to verify that they have permission to send mails.
- This is different to an open mail relay that will forward mails directly to the recipient server without authentication.
- Please note that a domain added to 'Managed Domains' cannot be used for smart host routing.
- The interface also allows you to configure default domain routing. This applies to 'Managed Domains' whose routing has not been configured. See 'Default Domain Routing' for more details.

						Choose Langua	age 🗸 English	Logout
Dom	nains							
Manag	ed Domains	Routes	Smart Hosts					
Total: 2	domain(s)							
O Bulk	Add							
<u>All</u> None	Domain	Name	Host Name or IP Address	Port	Username	Password	Confirm Password	Action
				25				
	comodo.che	nnai.com	mail1.comodo.chennai.com	25	example name	***	***	
	comodo.net		mail1.comodo.net	25	John	***	***	3
				6.d R	8 30			
Export	Delete							
	Enable Default	Domain Routing						
		(Save					

Smart Hosts - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header		Description				
Domain Name	The name	he name of the domain added to Secure Email Gateway.				
Host Name or IP Address	Host Nam	e or IP address of the 'Smart Host'.				
Port	The port n	umber to which the Secure Email Gateway should forward the mail.				
Action		To route the domain to a 'Smart Host', click this button after entering all the routing details. Allows you to delete a domain 'Smart Host' route from the list.				
		Allows you to delete a domain 'Smart Host' route from the list.				

The interface allow administrators to:

- Configure 'Smart Host' route for domains
- Delete 'Smart Host' routes for domains
- Export 'Smart Host' routes list for domains

Configure smart host route for domains

- Enter the domain whose mail you wish to route to a Smart Host in the 'Domain Name' column
- Enter the host name or IP address of the 'Smart Host' you wish to use for that domain
- · Add the port number to which Secure Email Gateway should forward the mail
- To add the 'Smart Host' route to the list, click the 📑 button under the 'Action' column header.

Delete smart host route for domains

- To delete 'Smart Host' routes one at a time, click the 🔯 button under the 'Action' column header and confirm the deletion in 'Confirmation' dialog.
- To delete 'Smart Host' routes, select the check boxes beside them and click the 'Delete' button at the bottom.

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide Comodo Creating Trust Online.

Domains			
Managed Domains	Routes	Smart Hosts	
Total: 2 domain(s)			
O Bulk Add			
All Domain M	Name	Host Name or IP Address	Port
			25
comodo.chenna	ii.com	mail1.comodo.chennai.com	25
comodo.net		mail1.comodo.net	25
Export Delete			
Enable Default De Re	omain outing		
		Save	

· Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion of the selected 'Smart Host' routes

Are you sure want to delete selected domain(s)?
OK Cancel

Export smart host routes list for domains

Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen

Domains

	Manage	d Domains	Routes		Smart Hosts			
	Total: 2 o	domain(s)						
	O Bulk	Add						
	All	Domai	n Name		Host Na	me or IP		Po
	None				Add	ress		
							25	
	\checkmark	comodo.cher	nnai.com		mail1.comodo	o.chennai.com	25	
	\square	comodo.net			mail1.comodo	o.net	25	
(Export	Delete					- 17 2 C 11 C	
		Enable Defaul	t Domain Routing					
				5	Save			

Click 'OK' to download and save the 'Smart Host' routes list as a text file to your system.

Opening smarthosts.	bxt	\times
You have chosen to	open:	
smarthosts.tx	t	
which is: Text	Document (135 bytes)	
from: https://	34.203.148.26:8443	
What should Firefo	x do with this file?	
○ <u>O</u> pen with	Notepad (default)	
Save File		-
Do this <u>a</u> uto	matically for files like this from now on.	
	OK Cance	I

4.2.4 Default Domain Routing

- Secure Email Gateway lets you configure routing for Managed Domains that are protected by its filtering engine. See 'Manage Domain Routes' to find out how to configure routing for managed domains.
- If no routing is configured, then the default domain routing will be applied. This default route can be configured in the 'Smart Hosts' section.
- Click 'SMTP' > 'Domains' > 'Smart Hosts' to open this interface.

					Choose Languag	e v English	Logout
Dom	ains						
Manage	ed Domains Routes	Smart Hosts					
Total: 2	domain(s)						
O Bulk	Add						
<u>All</u> None	Domain Name	Host Name or IP Address	Port	Username	Password	Confirm Password	Action
			25				
	comodo.chennai.com	mail1.comodo.chennai.com	25	example name	***	***	
	comodo.net	mail1.comodo.net	25	John	***	***	
Export	Delete						
	Enable Default Domain Routing]					
		Save					

- Select the 'Enable Default Domain Routing' check box
- The will open the route configuration section:

Delete		
Enable Default Domain Routing		
SMTP Server		
SMTP Port	25	
LDAP Profile	-None-	
	Save	

- **SMTP Server:** Enter the host name or IP address of the SMTP server to which SEG should forward email.
- **SMTP Port:** Enter the port number to which SEG should forward mail.
- **LDAP Profile:** Select the LDAP profile that SEG should use to verify users before forwarding mail. LDAP Profiles are configured in the **LDAP/DB** section.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

4.3 Secure Email Gateway SMTP AUTH Connector

The 'SMTP-AUTH' section lets you configure authentication settings for outgoing mails, to block users, and to configure 'Anomaly Detection'. Anomaly detection lets you track the IP addresses used to send mail for an email address.

• Click 'SMTP' > 'SMTP-AUTH' to open this interface.

SECURE EMAIL	SMTP-AUTH				Choose Languag	e 🔻 English	-Logout	
GATEWAY	SMTP Authentication Settings	Block Users	Anomaly Detec	lon				
* SMTP	Enable SMTP Authentication Only allow SMTP AUTH with TLS			n 🖌				
SMTP Settings Domains	Fake Sender Control Authentication method			rol and LDAP / AD •				
SMTP-AUTH LDAP/D8	Connection Timeout LDAP Profile			but S Default OpenLDAP AUTH V				
Creylist RBL	Envelope sender must match SMTP-AUTH username Default domain							
Relay DKIM	SMTP-AUTH username format			 Bomain: user#domain.com user#domain.com 				
Outgoing Limits Incoming Limits	Save							
Modules	Copyright® 2006-2019 Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved. Dome Antispam name and logo are trademarks of Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. Release: 6.7.9.50060ec							
Profile Management Reports Quarantine & Archive								

Click the following links for more details:

- SMTP Authentication Settings
- Block Users
- Anomaly Detection

4.3.1 SMTP Authentication Settings

- This area lets you choose the method of user authentication that SEG should use on outgoing mail.
- User authentication verifies that the sender is entitled to send mail from a specific domain.
- Click 'SMTP' > 'SMTP-AUTH' > 'SMTP Authentication Settings' to open this interface

	SMTP-AUTH		
ſ	SMTP Authentication Settings	Block Users	Anomaly Detection
	Enal	ble SMTP Authentic	ation 🗹
	Only all	ow SMTP AUTH with	ITLS 🗔
		Fake Sender Co	ntrol 🗔
		Authentication me	thod LDAP / AD 🔻
		Connection Tim	eout 5
		LDAP Pr	ofile Default OpenLDAP AUTH 🔻
	Envelope sender must match	h SMTP-AUTH usern	ame 🗹
		Default do	main
			Username
	SMTP-A	UTH username forr	nat * 🗐 Domain:
			🖲 user@domain.com 💿 user%domain.com
			Save

	SMTP Authentication Settings - Table of Parameters					
Parameter		Description				
Enable SMTP Authentication	If enabled, admins can configure an SMTP authentication method for senders. This option is disabled by default.					
Only allow SMTP AUTH with TLS	If enabled,	If enabled, authentication must be conducted over a secure TLS connection.				
Fake Sender Control	Will preven disabled	Will prevent outgoing mails that have a spoofed 'from' address. By default this option is disabled				
Authentication Method	Select the user authentication method from the drop-down. The options available are POP3/IMAP and LDAP/AD. The settings fields depend on the options chosen. See 'POP3/IMAP Authentication Method' and 'LDAP Authentication Method' for details on the respective settings.					
Connection Timeout	Enter the time in seconds during which authentication between the client and the POP3/IMAP/LDAP server must be completed. The user will be prompted to enter credentials again if the time elapses.					
Envelope sender must match SMTP-AUTH	SEG check authenticate	s whether the envelope sender name and username is same. SEG es the users via the servers added in the SMTP-AUTH server list.				
username	If enabled,	you have to select any of the authentication type below:				
	SMTP-AUT	H username format:				
	Username – Enter the domain in the default domain field. SEG appends the domain to the username and checks in the SMTP auth servers.					
	 Domain – Select the domain format. SEG checks the usernames for all domains in the SMTP auth servers. 					
POP3/IMAP Authentication	Method					
SMTP-AUTH server list	Authentica tion method	a Select authentication method - either POP3 or IMAP.				

	Connectio n type	Select the type of connection (clear text or encrypted SSL/TLS).				
	Hostname	Enter th	e server name or IP address of the SMTP-AUTH server.			
	Port	Enter th connect	Enter the port of the server to which Secure Email Gateway should connect to.			
	Enabled	Activate	ctivate or disable the server.			
	Action		Click this button to add an SMTP-AUTH server to the list after configuring all parameters.			
		×	Allows you to delete an auth server from the list.			
			Allows you to edit the parameters of an auth server.			
LDAP/AD Authentication Method						
LDAP Profile	Select the t configured	type of Ll in LDAP	ype of LDAP profile from the drop-down. The profiles available are n LDAP/DB section.			

Configure SMTP authentication settings

- Select the 'Enable SMTP Authentication' check box
- Select the 'Only allow SMTP AUTH with TLS' check box to allow only encrypted SMTP AUTH sessions
- Select the 'Fake Sender Control' to block fake sender email address in the SMTP Server.
- Select the type of authentication method from the 'Authentication method' drop-down. The options available are POP3 / IMAP and LDAP. See 'POP3/IMAP Authentication Method' and 'LDAP Authentication Method ' for details on the respective settings.
- Enter the time in seconds after which the SMTP Auth session will end.

POP3/IMAP Authentication Method

- Authentication method Select the POP3 or IMAP type of authentication method from the drop-down.
- Connection type Selection the type of connection, whether it should clear text or encrypted. The
 options available are 'Plain', 'SSL' and 'TLS'.
- Hostname Enter the IP address or the server name of the SMTP AUTH server.
- Port Enter the port of the server to which Secure Email Gateway should connect.
- Click the is button to add the server to the list.
- Repeat the process to add more auth servers.

SMTP-AUTH server list Drag and drop to change server order.	Authentication method	Connection type	Hostname	Port	Enabled	Action
	POP3 V	Plain 🔻		0		
	POP3	Plain	192.168.199.31	25	Yes	🙀 🗹
	IMAP	Plain	192.168.199.30	25	Yes	🙀 🗹

- You can change the server order by dragging and dropping them.
- To edit the details of an auth server, click the G button.

Authentication method	POP3 V
Connection type	SSL 🗸
Hostname *	192.168.199.31
Port *	25

- Edit the parameters as required and click 'Save'.
- To delete an auth server from the list, click the k button and click 'OK' in the confirmation dialog.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

LDAP Authentication Method

 LDAP Profile - Select the type of LDAP profile from the drop-down. The profiles available here are configured in LDAP/DB section.

				Choose Language	 English 	Logou
SMTP-AUTH						
SMTP Authentication Settings	Block Users	Anomaly Detection				
Enable	SMTP Authentication					
Only allow	Only allow SMTP AUTH with TLS					
Fake Sender Control						
Authentication method		LDAP / AD 🗸				
	Connection Timeout					
	LDAP Profile	Default OpenLDAP A	UTH 🗸			
		Default AD				
		Default OpenLDAP				
		Default OpenLDAP A	лн			
Copyright@ 2006-20	18 Comodo Security S	o Default AD AUTH				
Dome Antispam name a	nd logo are trademark Release: 6.7.1.89	company LDAP	10.			

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

4.3.2 Block Users

- The 'Block Users' area lets you block outgoing mail that is routed through Secure Email Gateway. You can block individual users or entire domains.
- The interface lets you view existing blocks, add new block rules, and search users by name and domain.
- Click 'SMTP' > 'SMTP-AUTH' > 'Block Users' to open the interface

	SMTP-AUTH			
SECURE EMAIL	SMTP Authentication Sett	ings Block Users Anomaly Dete	ection -	
GATEWAY	Search			
System	[Search	Clear	
SMTP		Blocking Lifetime Unlimited 🗸	7	
SMTP Settings		Se	ave	
Domains	Date	Username	Action	
SMTP-AUTH	Starts Wit	th v Alice		
LDAP/DB	20/10/2017 15:35:47	Contains: faka		
Greyist	18/07/2018 08:30:53	Contains: race	2	
RBL	18/07/2018 08:31:23	Equals To: Bob®domain.com		
Disclaimer	18/07/2018 08:31:44	Starts With- Smith		
Relay	18/07/2018 08:32:03	Starts With: Alice		
DKIM		8 K 8 3 30		
Outgoing Limits		1		
Incoming Limits	Export Import Delete all			
Modules	Consistin	1008 2018 Comeda Paravila Palationa Inc. A		
Profile Management	Dome Antispam	name and logo are trademarks of Comodo Se	ecurity Solutions. Inc.	

The interface allow administrators to:

- Add blocked users
- Blocking Lifetime
- Remove users from the blocked list
- Search for blocked users
- Export lists of blocked users
- · Import lists of blocked users from file

To Add a Blocked User

Type the username (or part of the username) of the user you wish to block in the 'Username' field. You can then set how the rule should be applied using the drop-down menu:

- · Starts With Blocks users whose names begin with the entered text
- Equals To Blocks users whose names exactly match the entered text
- Contains Blocks users whose names contain the entered text somewhere in their name. Will also block
 exact matches

Da	ate	Username	Action
	Contains 🗸	example.domain.com	
13.04 2017 1	Starts With Equals To	Starts With: Alice	
13.04.2017 1	Contains	Starts With: Smith	
13.04.2017 1	0:17:10	Equals To: Bob@eample.com	
13.04.2017 1	0:17:25	Contains: example.domain.com	

Click the 'Add' button to apply your choice. The item will be added to the list with the category type displaying on the left side.

				English	Logout	
SMTP-AUTH						
SMTP Authentication Setting	gs Block Users Anomaly Detection	on				
Search						
	Blocking Lifetime Unlimited 🤍					
	Save					
Date	Username	Action				
Starts With	~ Alice					
20/10/2017 15:35:47	Contains: fake					
18/07/2018 08:30:53	Contains: example.domain.com					
18/07/2018 08:31:23	Equals To: Bob@domain.com					
18/07/2018 08:31:44	18/07/2018 08:31:44 Starts With: Smith					
18/07/2018 08:32:03	18/07/2018 08:32:03 Starts With: Alice					
	« « »»»»					
Export Import Delete all						

Blocking Lifetime

The 'Blocking lifetime' refers to the number of hours the email address will remain blocked at the SMTP Server. The available intervals are 'Unlimited', '1 hour', '6 hours', '12 hours' and '24 hours'.

SMTP-AUTH				
SMTP Authentication Settings	Block Users	Anon	naly Detection	
Search				
	Blocking L	ifetime	Unlimited 🗸	
			Unlimited 1 hour	е
Date	Use	ername	6 hours 12 hours	Action
Contains 🗸 e	xample.domain.c	om	24 nours	

To remove users from the blocked list

- To remove users one at a time, click the 🔯 button under the 'Action' column header and confirm the deletion in the 'Confirmation' dialog.
- To delete all the blocked users in the list, click the 'Delete all' button at the bottom.

Are you sure you want to de	elete all entries?
ОК	Cancel

• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion of all blocked users.

To search for blocked users

Click the 'Search' link at the top of the interface

SMTP-AUTH			
SMTP Authentication Setting	s Block Users	Anomaly Detection	
Search			
	*	Search	Clear
	Blocking L	ifetime Unlimited ~	
		Save	
Date	Use	ername	Action
Contains	example.domain.c	om	•
13.04.2017 10:16:40	Starts With: Alice		
13.04.2017 10:16:48	Starts With: Smit	h	

• In the search field, enter a full or partial name and click 'Search'.

The items that contain the entered search text will be displayed.

			-		Choose Language	✓ English	Logout
SMTP-AU	JTH						
SMTP Authentic	ation Settings	Block Users	Anomaly Detection				
Search							
	exam	ble	Search	r			
		Blocking Lifeti	ime Unlimited 🧹				
			Save				
Date	2	Userr	name A	tion			
[Starts With ${\scriptstyle\bigtriangledown}$	Alice					
18/07/2018 08	:30:53 C	ontains: example.	.domain.com 🙀				
	<u></u>	« »	»»				
Export Import	elete all						

- To display all the items again, click 'Clear'.
- To remove the search field, click the 'Search' link again.

To export blocked users to file

Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen

	Blocking Lifetime Unlimited 🤍	
	Sa	ive
Date	Username	Action
Starts Wi	th 🗸 Alice	
20/10/2017 15:35:47	Contains: fake	
18/07/2018 08:30:53	Contains: example.domain.com	
18/07/2018 08:31:23	Equals To: Bob@domain.com	
18/07/2018 08:31:44	Starts With: Smith	
18/07/2018 08:32:03	Starts With: Alice	
	«« « »»»	

• The user list will be exported as a .txt file. Save the file as required.

To import blocked users from file

Click the 'Import' link at the bottom of the screen

Da	to	Usornamo	Action
Da	ite	Osemane	ACTION
	Contains ~	example.domain.com	
13.04.2017 10	0:16:40	Starts With: Alice	
13.04.2017 10	0:16:48	Starts With: Smith	
13.04.2017 10	0:17:10	Equals To: Bob@eample.com	
13.04.2017 10	0:17:25	Contains: example.domain.com	

The 'Import' dialog will be displayed.

Import		
🕂 Upload		
Save Close		

• Click the 'Upload' button, navigate to the the location where the file is saved, select it and click 'Open'.

nport	
🕂 Upload	🗙 Clear All
C:\fakepath\smtpauthblockbusters.txt Done	<u>Clear</u>
Save Close	

- Repeat the process to add more files.
- To remove a file, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all added files, click 'Clear All' at top right.

4.3.3 Anomaly Detection

- 'Anomaly Detection' will alert you if a user has sent messages from multiple IP addresses within a set time period.
- You can choose to block these users if the outgoing mail IP addresses exceed the number set in this tab.
 - This value cannot be '0'. Set a value between 1 and 10,000 to block users, IP addresses or SMTP auth requests.
- Click 'SMTP' > 'SMTP-AUTH' > 'Anomaly Detection' to open this area.

		-	Choose	e Language	v English	Logo
SMTP-AUTH						
SMTP Authentication Settings	Block Users	Anomaly Detection				
Enable Anomaly Detec	tion 🔽					
Enable Monitoring M	ode 🗹					
Interval(min) 30					
Number of failed SMTP-AUTH require from a same IP to block the	at IP 5					
Number of users from the same IP makes failed SMTP-AUTH requi	that ests					
Number of different IP addresses makes successful SMTP-A requests with same usern	that UTH 3 ame					
	Save					

	Anomaly Detection Settings - Table of Parameters
Parameter	Description
Enable Anomaly Detection	Enable the feature with the parameters listed directly below this setting. Anomaly detection is disabled by default.
Enable monitoring mode	If enabled, the SMTP-AUTH controller monitors authorization requests from the specified IP addresses. By default this setting is disabled.
Interval (min)	The auditing time period for anomaly detection. To use the default settings as an example, a user will be blocked if detected IP addresses exceed 100 in any 30 minute period. Administrators will receive an alert if more than 30 IPs are detected in 30 minutes.
Number of failed SMTP- AUTH requests from a same IP to block that IP	Number of failed SMTP-AUTH requests from a particular IP before it is rejected.
Number of users from the same IP that makes failed SMTP-AUTH requests	The minimum number of users with same IP address that can make failed SMTP- AUTH requests. Any request beyond the threshold set will not be processed
Number of different IP	The minimum number of different IP addresses that can make successful SMTP-AUTH

[•] To finalize the import, click 'Save'.

addresses that makes successful SMTP-AUTH requests with same username

requests with the same username. Any request beyond the threshold set will not be processed

Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

4.4 LDAP/Local DB/My SQL User Database

- Secure Email Gateway can be configured to check the validity of a recipient before filtering begins. This helps ensure resources are not wasted on invalid recipients.
- If the email servers behind Secure Email Gateway are integrated with LDAP, Local DB or MY SQL Database, then Secure Email Gateway will check the validity of recipients. If they are not valid then it will reject the emails at the SMTP level.
- To open the 'LDAP/DB' screen, click the 'SMTP' tab on the left menu and click 'LDAP/DB'.

						Choose	Language	✓ English	
_DAP/DB									
LDAP	Local DB Users	MySQL User Database							
<u>Add</u>	LDAP profile								
	LDAP Prof	ie Name		Action					
Defau	lt AD		1						
Defau Defau	lt AD lt OpenLDAP		ii ii						
Defau Defau Defau	lt AD lt OpenLDAP lt OpenLDAP AUTH		ii ii ii		2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2				
Defau Defau Defau Defau	lt AD lt OpenLDAP lt OpenLDAP AUTH lt AD AUTH				2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2				

See the following sections for more details:

- LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)
- Local DB Users
- MySQL User Database

4.4.1 LDAP Profile

- The lightweight directory access protocol (LDAP) is a protocol for querying and modifying data using directory services running over TCP/IP.
- If you integrate LDAP database with Secure Email Gateway then the service can check whether a recipient is a valid
 - If the recipient is not a valid user then the email is rejected.
- This avoids wasting resources by filtering mail for invalid recipients. The LDAP profiles added here are available for selection in interfaces such as 'Manage Domains' > 'Routes' and 'SMTP AUTH > SMTP Authentication Settings'.
- Click 'SMTP' > 'LDAP/DB' > 'LDAP', to open the configuration screen.

	Choose Lang	uage 🗸 English			
AP/DB					
AP Local DB Users MySQL User Database					
Add LDAP profile					
LDAP Profile Name		Action			
Default AD	1	•			
Default OpenLDAP	1				
Default OpenLDAP AUTH	8				
	8				
Default AD AUTH	100				

LDAP Profile - Table of Column Descriptions							
Column Header	Description						
LDAP Profile Name	The label provided for the custom LDAP policy. Each profile contains connection information and search settings to query the database.						
Action	Ĩ	Edit the details of a profile					
	i da	Copy a profile so it can be used as the basis for a new profile.					
	×	Delete the profile from the list.					

From this screen administrators can:

- Create and add a new LDAP profile
- Edit a LDAP profile
- Delete a LDAP profile

To create a new LDAP profile

You can create a new LDAP profile in two ways:

- By clicking the copy button beside an LDAP profile. This will open the 'New LDAP Profile' screen with details pre-populated for the copied profile.
- By clicking the 'Add LDAP profile' link at the top

	Choose Language 🗸 English
w LDAP Profile	
Profile Name *	
Connection type	Plain 🗸
Host Name or IP Address *	
Port *	389
Host Name or IP Address (Secondary)	
Port (Secondary)	0
Search Type	Realtime 🗸
Cache Time (minutes) *	0
Anonymous Access	
Login DN *	
Password *	
Enable catch-all for this profile	
Search Base *	
Search Pattern * %u = "user" for "user@domain.com" %d = "domain.com" for "user@domain.com" %m = Whole e-mail address	(mail=%m)
Test E-mail Address	
Email host attribute name	
Check Local DB Users Also	
	Save Verify Cancel

	LDAP Profile -Table of Parameters			
Parameter	Description			
Profile Name	Enter the name of the new LDAP profile			
Connection type	Determines how Secure Email Gateway should connect to the LDAP server. The options available are:			
	 TLS (Encrypted with the TLS protocol. Recommended) 			
	SSL (Encrypted using the SSL protocol. Use if your systems have compatibility issues with TLS)			
Host Name or IP Address	Enter the hostname or IP address of the LDAP/Active Directory. Secure Email Gateway will first check the primary server and will check the secondary server if the primary is not available.			
Port	Specify the LDAP server port number. If you use 'Active Directory' then, instead of the default LDAP port 389, port 3826 must be used as Active Directory Catalog port.			
Search Type	Select the type of search from the drop-down. The options available are:Realtime - Checks the AD server each time for user validity			
	 Cache - Checks the user validity from the system's cache memory and if not available checks the AD server. 			
Cache Time (minutes)	If the 'Cache' option is enabled as 'Search Type', this field becomes active. Enter the time in minutes the details of users are cached after which they are wiped out.			

Anonymous Access	If this feature is enabled, the connection to LDAP server will be created anonymously so that username and password are not required.
Login DN	LDAP username to connect LDAP / Active Directory server.
Password	Enter the LDAP user password.
Enable catch-all for this profile	When this feature is enabled, if the recipient's address is value1-value2- value3@domain.com then Secure Email Gateway first checks whether this address is registered in LDAP. If it does not find it, it deletes value1 and checks the remaining value2-value3@domain.com address. If it does not find it again then it delete value2 and checks value3@domain.com
Search Base	Specify the search starting criteria to be used in LDAP tree.
Search Pattern	Determines which LDAP attributes will be searched in search base.
Test E-Mail Address	Enter the email address to test the LDAP connection.
Email host attribute name	Enter the mail host attribute name for the LDAP / Active Directory server.
Check Local DB Users Also	Checks for users in Local Data base users list as well.

- Click 'Verify' to check the entered parameters and connectivity are correct. If verification fails, the error message will be displayed.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

To edit a LDAP profile

• Click the 🗹 button beside a LDAP profile that you want to edit.

	Choose Language V English Logout
Edit LDAP profile	
Profile Name *	Comodo Open LDAP
Connection type	Plain 🗸
Host Name or IP Address *	192.168.193.31
Port *	389
Host Name or IP Address (Secondary)	
Port (Secondary)	0
Search Type	Realtime 🗸
Cache Time (minutes) *	0
Anonymous Access	
Login DN *	comodo
Password *	•••••
Enable catch-all for this profile	
Search Base *	Support dc=comodo
Search Pattern * %u = "user" for "user@domain.com" %d = "domain.com" for "user@domain.com" %m = Whole e-mail address	(mail=%m)
Test E-mail Address	
Email host attribute name	
Check Local DB Users Also	
	Save Verify Cancel

- Edit the required parameters. This is similar to the method explained in the 'Add' section.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

To delete a LDAP profile

• Click the delete button 🔯 beside a LDAP profile that you want to remove.



• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

4.4.2 Local DB Users

- Secure Email Gateway allows you to add users to its local database for managed domains.
- This helps to ensure mails to invalid recipients are rejected before filtering begins.
- The users added here are available for selection in interfaces such as 'Managed Domains > Routes'.
- Click 'SMTP' > 'LDAP/DB' > 'Local DB Users' to open this interface.

			hoose Language	v English	Logo
DAP/	DB				
LDAP L	ocal DB Users	MySQL User Database		·····.	
	s	earch			
Bulk Add					
<u>All</u> None		E-mail	Action		
	alice@example.co	m	×		
	john@example.co	m			
Actions ~	Do!	First Previous Page 1 / 1 50 V Records per	page Next Last		

Local DB Users - Table of Column Descriptions				
Column Header	Description			
Email	The addre	ess of the user added to Secure Email Gateway		
Actions		Add a user. Enter the user's email address in the field provided then click this button.		
	×	Delete a user from the list. Use the check-boxes on the left to select users.		

The number of users to be displayed on the screen can be set from the 'Records per page' drop-down field.

Page <mark>1 / 1</mark>	10 👻	Records per page	Next
E-mail	10 25 50		A
	100 250 500		

Click the 'First, Previous, Next and Last' buttons to view all the items in the list.

The interface allows administrators to:

- Add a user
- Add multiple users
- Search for users
- Delete users
- Export user list

To add a user

· Enter the user's email address in the field under 'E-mail' column

LDAP	Local DB Users MySQL User Database	
<u>Bulk Ad</u>	Search Clear	
<u>All</u> <u>None</u>	E-mail	Action
	user6@example.com	
	alice@example.com	
	john@example.com	
	user1@example.com	
	user2@example.com	
	user3@example.com	
	user4@example.com	
	user5@example.com	
Actions	✓ Do! First Previous Page1 / 1 50 ∨ Records per page	Next Last

Click the 📑 button under the 'Action' column.

Note: You can add users for managed domains only.

The user will be added and displayed in the list. You can also add multiple users at a time. See 'To add multiple users' for more details.

To add multiple users

• Click the 'Bulk Add' link in the 'Local DB Users' screen

LDAP	Local DB Users	MySQL User Database	
Bulk Add		Search Clear	
and and a state of the			
<u>All</u> <u>None</u>		E-mail	Action

The 'Bulk Add' screen will be displayed.

Add Local DB Users

		M.		a 1
$\mathbf{D}\mathbf{U}$	IN.	н	u	u

You must write one user for each line (max. 500 entries).	
Add Cancel	

- Enter the users' email addresses each per line. The maximum allowed at a time is 500 users.
- Click 'Add'.

Note: You can add users for managed domains only.

The users will be added and displayed in the list.

To search for users

• In the search field, enter a full or partial name.

LDAP/DB		
LDAP Local D	B Users MySQL User Database Search Clear	
All None	E-mail	Action
alice	a@example.com	
johr	i@example.com	
use	r1@example.com	

Click 'Search'.

The items that contain the entered search text will be displayed.

	Choos	e Language	v English	Logout			
LDAP/	LDAP/DB						
LDAP L	ocal DB Users MySQL User Database						
user	Search Clear						
Bulk Add							
<u>All</u> <u>None</u>	E-mail	Action					
	user1@example.com						
	user2@example.com						
	user3@example.com						
	user4@example.com						
	user5@example.com						
Actions 🗸	Previous Page1 / 1 50 √ Records per page	Next Last					

• To display all the items again, click 'Clear'.

To delete users

- To remove users one at a time, click the 🔯 button under the 'Action' column header and confirm the deletion in the 'Confirmation' dialog.
- To delete multiple users in the list in one go, select the check boxes beside them.

LDAP/DB						
LDAP	Local DB Users	MySQL User	⁻ Database			
O Bulk A	dd	rch Clear	-			
Actions	✓ Do!	First	Previous	Page <mark>1</mark>		
<u>All</u> <u>None</u>			E	-mail		
	user1@example user2@example	e.com				
	user3@example	e.com				
	user4@example	e.com				
	user5@example	e.com				
	user6@example	e.com				
	user7@example	e.com				
	user8@example	e.com				
	user9@example	e.com				
	user12@examp	le.com				
Export Actions Delete	Do!	First	Previous	Page1		
Expert						

• Select 'Delete' from the 'Actions' drop-down and click the 'Do!' button.

The selected users will be deleted from the list.

To export the user list to a file

- Use the check-boxes on the left to select specific users OR click the 'All' link
- · Click the 'Export' link at the upper-left
- The exported file in in .txt format. Save the file as required

LDAP/DB				
LDAP Lo	ocal DB Users MySQL User Database			
Bulk Add	Search Clear			
<u>All</u> <u>None</u>	E-mail	Action		
	alice@example.com			
	john@example.com			
\checkmark	user1@example.com			
	user2@example.com			
	user3@example.com			
	user4@example.com			
\checkmark	user5@example.com			
\checkmark	user6@example.com			
Actions 🗸	Do! First Previous Page1 / 1 50 ✓ Records per page	Next Last		

4.4.3 My SQL User Database

- Secure Email Gateway is capable of verifying the validity of users by referring to a 'MySQL User Database' located on a remote server.
- If the recipient is not a valid user then email is rejected at the SMTP level. Since the filtering process is not engaged for invalid recipients, Secure Email Gateway's resources are not wasted.
- The 'MySQL User Database profiles' added here are available for selection in interfaces such as 'Managed Domains > Routes'.
- To open the 'MySQL User Database' screen,
 - Click 'SMTP' > 'LDAP/DB' > 'MySQL User Database':

LDAP Local Di	BUsers MySQL User Datab	ase				
Add MySQL Use	r Database					
Profile Name	Host Name or IP Address	Port	Database	SQL Clause	Acti	on
Dome Antispam	192.168.199.31	25	DAS_DB	mail='%m'		2

MySQL User Database Profile - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header	Description					
Profile Name	The name	of the MySQL User Database profile added to Secure Email Gateway				
Host Name or IP Address	Displays the address of the system where the 'MySQL User Database' is located.					
Port	Displays the port number to which Secure Email Gateway connects to.					
Database	The name of the 'MySQL User Database'.					
SQL Clause	The 'SQL	clause' used to fetch the users' details.				
Action	ľ	Allows you to edit the details of the 'MySQL' profile				
	R	Allows you to delete a 'MySQL' profile from the list.				

From this screen administrators can:

- Add a new MySQL profile
- Edit a MySQL profile
- Delete a MySQL profile

To add a new MySQL profile

• Click 'Add MySQL User Database' link at the top of the screen.

DAP Local DI	BUsers MySQL User Datab	ase						
Add MySQL Use	r Database							
Profile Name	Host Name or IP Address	Port	Database	SQL Clause	Act	ion		
Dome Antispam	192.168.199.31	25	DAS_DB	mail='%m'	X	8		
		25	DAS DR	mail='% m'		02		

The 'New MySQL User Database' screen will be displayed.

	Choose Language V English Logout
New MySQL User Database)
Profile Name *	Dome Antispam
Host Name or IP Address *	192.168.199.31
Port *	25
Search Type	Realtime 🗸
Cache Time (minutes) *	0
Database *	DAS_DB
Username *	DAS1
Password *	
SQL Clause * %m = Whole e-mail address	mail='%m'
Check Local DB Users Also	
E-mail address for Testing *	example@comodo.com
	Save Verify Cancel

MySQL User Database Profile -Table of Parameters					
Parameter	Description				
Profile Name	Enter the name of the MySQL profile				
Host Name or IP Address	Enter the hostname or IP address of the system where MySQL database is located.				
Port	Enter the port number to which Secure Email Gateway should connect to.				
Search Type	 Select the type of search from the drop-down. The options available are: Realtime - Checks the MySQL server each time for user validity 				
	 Cache - Checks the user validity from the system's cache memory and if not available checks the MYSQL server. 				
Cache Time (minutes)	If the 'Cache' option is enabled as 'Search Type', this field becomes active. Enter the time in minutes the details of users are cached after which they are wiped out.				
Database	Enter the MySQL database name				
Username	The username to access the MySQL server				
Password	Enter the password to access the MySQL server				
SQL Clause	The SQL clause to fetch the users' details				
Check Local DB Users Also	Checks for users in Local Data base users list as well.				
E-Mail address for testing	Enter the email address to test the MySQL database connection.				

- Click 'Verify' to check the entered parameters and connectivity are correct. If verification fails, the error message will be displayed.
- Click the 'Save' button to apply your changes.
To edit a MySQL profile

Click the dutton beside a 'MySQL' profile that you want to edit.

<u> </u>	Choose Language 🗸 English Logout
Edit MySQL User Database	
Profile Name *	Dome Antispam
Host Name or IP Address *	192.168.199.31
Port *	25
Search Type	Realtime 🗸
Cache Time (minutes) *	0
Database *	DAS_DB
Username *	DAS1
Password *	••••••
SQL Clause * %m = Whole e-mail address	mail='%m'
Check Local DB Users Also	
E-mail address for Testing *	example@comodo.com
	Save Verify Cancel

- Edit the required parameters. This is similar to the method explained in the 'Add' section.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

To delete a MySQL profile

Click the delete button 🖄 beside a 'MySQL' profile that you want to remove.

The page at https://dei	no-das.cdome.net:8443 says:
Are you sure you	want to delete this entry?
	OK Cancel

• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

4.5 Greylist

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Greylist' in the left menu.
- Greylisting is another form of spam control whereby Secure Email Gateway will temporarily reject mail from senders it does not recognize. Instead, it will send a 'try again later' message to the sending mail server.
- Upon receiving this message, legitimate mail servers will try to resend the mail after a delay. Secure Email Gateway will accept the resent mail providing it does not fall foul of its other filters.
- However, because of the prohibitive cost of re-sending millions of mails, spam servers are unlikely to perform this simple resend This means greylisting can be very effective at blocking large amounts of spam at source.

 You have the option to disable greylisting entirely, or you can specify IP addresses/domains as exceptions (so CSEG will accept mail from them on first contact).

			Choose Language	English	Logout
Greylist					
The record is added successfully	6				
You can create greylist ignore rea	cord here for IP, Network and domains.				
Greylist Type	Greylist Value	Action			
IP or Network Address 🗸					
IP or Network Address	10.0.0.1				
Domain	teest.com				
Export					
Copyright® 20 Dome Antispam p	06-2018 Comodo Security Solutions, In ame and Iono are trademarks of Comod	c. All rights reserved.	lac.		
Dome Antispani in	Release: 6.7.1.8972932	o Security Solutions,			

See 'Greylist Ignored IP Addresses/Domains' for how to add domains, networks and IP addresses to the ignore list.

4.5.1 Greylist Ignored IP Addresses/Domains

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Greylist' to open the greylist screen.
- You can add IP addresses and domains as exceptions to the greylist policy.
- Mail from these addresses will be accepted immediately, without requiring the source mail server to resend. See 'Greylist', if you'd like to read a description of greylisting.

			Choose Language	English	Logout
Greylist					
The record is added successfully.					
You can create greylist <mark>ignore</mark> rec	ord here for IP, Network and domains.				
Greylist Type	Greylist Value	Action			
IP or Network Address \smallsetminus					
IP or Network Address	10.0.0.1				
Domain	teest.com				
Export					

Greylist Ignored Record List - Table of Column Descriptions		
Column Header	Description	
Greylist Type	The type of Greylist whether domain name or IP address added.	
Greylist Value	The domain name or the IP/Network address added.	

Action	To add an email source to Greylist ignore record, click this button after selecting and entering the details in the fields under 'Greylist Type' and 'Greylist Value' columns respectively.
	Allows you to delete a record from the list.

The interface allows administrators to:

- Add an IP address/domain name to Greylist ignore list
- Delete an IP address/domain name from Greylist ignore list
- Export Greylist ignore list to a file

To add a domain name or IP address to Greylist ignore list

• For 'Greylist Type' select whether you want to create an exception for a domain or an IP address:

			Choose Language	v English	Logout
Greylist					
The record is added successfully	ŀ.				
You can create greylist ignore re	cord here for IP, Network and domains.				
Greylist Type	Greylist Value	Action			
IP or Network Address \smallsetminus					
IP or Network Address	10.0.0.1				
Domain	teest.com				
Export					
Copyright® 20 Dome Antispam n	106-2018 Comodo Security Solutions, In ame and logo are trademarks of Comod	c. All rights reserved. o Security Solutions,	Inc.		
	Release: 0.7.1.8972932				

- Type the specific domain name or IP address in the 'Greylist Value' field.
- Click the state button under the 'Action' column.

The domain name/IP address will be added and displayed in the list.

	Choose	e Language	English
Greylist			
The record is added successfully.			
′ou can create greylist ignore rec Greylist Type	ord here for IP, Network and domains.	Action	
′ou can create greylist ignore rec Greylist Type IP or Network Address ∽	ord here for IP, Network and domains. Greylist Value	Action	
'ou can create greylist ignore rec Greylist Type IP or Network Address → IP or Network Address	ord here for IP, Network and domains. Greylist Value 10.0.0.1	Action	
'ou can create greylist ignore rec Greylist Type IP or Network Address ∽ IP or Network Address IP or Network Address	ord here for IP, Network and domains. Greylist Value 10.0.0.1 10.108.51.202	Action	

To delete a domain name or IP address from Greylist ignore list

• To delete a domain name/IP address from the Greylist ignore list , click the 🔯 button under the 'Action' column header.

Are you sure you want t	o delete this entry?
ок	Cancel

• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

To export Greylist ignore list to a file

Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen

Greylist Type	Greylist Value	
IP or Network Address \smallsetminus		
IP or Network Address	10.0.0.1	
Domain	notsuredomain.com	
Export		

• Save the exported file to your system.

4.6 Manage RBL Servers

- Click 'SMTP' > 'RBL' to open this screen.
- A realtime blackhole list (RBL) is a list of mail servers that send spam, act as spam relays, or have sent mail containing viruses.
- Secure Email Gateway can block connections from addresses found in the realtime blackhole lists.
- You can add as many RBL servers as you wish. You can also enable or disable individual lists as required.

Choose Language

RBL

Add RBL server

Server Host Address	Description	Туре	Enabled	
bl.score.senderscore.com	Return Path Reputation Network Blacklist	RBL	<u>Yes</u>	
zen.spamhaus.org	spamhaus	RBL	Yes	
psbl.surriel.com	Passive Spam Block List	RBL	Yes	
bl.spamcop.net	spamcop	RBL	Yes	

Export

RBL Servers - Table of Column Descriptions				
Column Header		Description		
Server Host Address	The addres	ss of the RBL server.		
Description	The descri	otion provided at the time of adding the RBL server.		
Туре	The type o	The type of block list selected.		
Enabled	Indicates w	ndicates whether the RBL server is enabled or not for the 'Profiles'.		
Action	Allows you to delete an RBL server from the list.			

The interface allow administrators to:

- Add a RBL server
- Enable/disable a RBL server
- Delete a RBL server
- Export RBL server list to a file

To add a RBL server

Click the 'Add RBL Server' link at the top

Logout

English

RBL				
Add RBL server	Description	Туре	Enabled	
bl.score.senderscore.com	Return Path Reputation Network Blacklist	RBL	Yes	
zen.spamhaus.org	spamhaus	RBL	Yes	
psbl.surriel.com	Passive Spam Block List	RBL	Yes	
bl.spamcop.net	spamcop	RBL	Yes	

The 'Add RBL server' screen will be displayed:

	Choose Language V English Logout
Add RBL server	
Server Host Address *	
Description	
Туре	RBL ~
Enable this RBL all profiles	
	Save Cancel

- Server Host Address: Enter the address of the RBL server
- · Description: Enter an appropriate description for the server
- **Type:** Select the type of block list from the options.
 - RBL Realtime Black Hole Lists
 - SBL Spamhaus Block List
 - XBL Spamhaus Exploits List
 - SMTP Email server List
- Enable this RBL for all profiles: If selected, the server will be enabled for all the profiles in Secure Email Gateway. See 'Profile Management' for more details about profiles.
- Click 'Save' to add the new RBL server.

To enable/disable a RBL server

· Click the 'Yes/No' link under the 'Enabled' column

RBL				
Add RBL server			\frown	
Server Host Address	Description	Туре	Enabled	
bl.score.senderscore.com	Return Path Reputation Network Blacklist	RBL	Yes	2
zen.spamhaus.org	spamhaus	RBL	Yes	2
psbl.surriel.com	Passive Spam Block List	RBL	Yes	2
bl.spamcop.net	spamcop	RBL	Yes	

- Click 'Yes' to enable the server for all the profiles.
- Click 'No' to enable the server for the current profile.

The RBL servers can be enabled/disabled independently also for the profiles available in Secure Email Gateway. Refer to the section '**Profile Management**' for more details.

Selection				×
Do you wa	nt to apply	this chang	ge for all profiles	?
	Yes	No	Cancel	

To delete a RBL server

•

To delete a RBL server from the list , click the 这 button.



• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

To export RBL server list to a file

Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen



• Download and save the list as a text file to your system.

4.7 Disclaimer

- Secure Email Gateway allows you to insert disclaimers in outgoing mails for managed domains.
- The screen has two sections 'Text Footer' and 'HTML Footer'.
 - The 'Text Footer' is for the disclaimer content, and the 'HTML Footer' can be used for corporate messages.
- Click 'SMTP' > 'Disclaimer' to open this screen.

Disc	laimer	Logout
Managed Domain Name *	-Choose-	
Enabled		
Text Footer		
HTML Footer		
	Save Cancel	

- Managed Domain Name: Select the managed domain from the drop-down for which you want to add a disclaimer.
- Enabled: If selected, the messages will be inserted in the outgoing mails of the domain.

- Text Footer: Enter the disclaimer content in this field.
- HTML Footer: Enter content such as corporate message and so on in this field.
- Click 'Save'

To edit the disclaimer, open the screen, select the domain from the drop-down, edit the messages and click 'Save'.

4.8 SMPT Relay

- Click 'SMTP' > 'Relay' in the left-menu to open this interface.
- Adding endpoint details to relay list lets recipients not added to managed domains also send mails.

		Choose Lang	juage 🖂 Eng	glish Logout
Relay				
IP Based	Office 365 Check			
	IP Range	Sender Domain Check	Action	
192.168.2	2.1	0		
192.168.		0		
192.168.1	.1	0		
Range Ex 192.168.2 192.168.2 192.168.2 192.168.2	amples 2.1 (only one IP address) 2.2-5 (IP addresses in the ra 2. (whole 192.168.2.0/24 C c (whole 192.168.0.0/16 B cla	nge 192.168.2.2 to 192.168.2.5) :lass) iss)		

The screen allows you to add a single IP address, a range of IP addresses or a IP address class range.

• To add an IP address, range or class, enter the details in the field under 'IP Range' and click the 🖻 button.

The IP address will be added and displayed.

• To remove an address, click the 🔯 button.

Are you sure you want to delete this entry?
OK Cancel

Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

Office 365 Check

Secure Email Gateway supports Microsoft Office 365. Click here to know how to integrate and deploy Secure Email Gateway protection.

4.9 DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM)

- Click 'SMTP' > 'DKIM' to open this interface.
- DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) is a method of authenticating outgoing mail. It allows senders to
 associate a domain with an outgoing mail.
- An electronic signature is inserted into the header of an outgoing mail to identify the mail source.
- Secure Email Gateway lets you create a new domain key for managed domains to authenticate outgoing mails.
- After the domain key is generated, it has to be entered in the DNS record. Please refer to your domain or web hosting documentation to add DKIM records for your domain.

		Choos	e Language	English	Logout
DKIM	I				
Managed Domain Name *	-Choose-				
Enable DKIM					
Create New Domainkey	Create				
Private Key(Please just upload file which has format .pem key .publickey)					
	Download private key Import				
Public Key(Please just upload file which has format .pem key .publickey)					
	Download public key Import				
		Save	View DNS regi	ister text Cano	:el

Select the domain from the drop-down for which you authenticate with DKIM

Managed Domain	Choose	~	
Name *	-Choose-	^	
Enable	arda.com		
Croate New	bilisim.ml		
Domainkey	bulut.ml		
	comodo.ordabirbahce.com		
Drivoto	example.com		
Key(Please	gmail.com		
just upload	ilyas.com		
has format			

If you have the domain key that needs to be associated with your mails, then follow the steps below:

- Leave the 'DKIM' check box, unchecked.
- Click the 'Import' link

Ir	nport	
	🖶 Upload	
	Save Close	

Click the 'Upload' link, navigate to the location where the private key for the selected domain is saved and click 'Open'

mport	
- Upload	× Clear All
C:\fakepath\Private Key.txt Done	Clear
Save Close	

- To remove the selected file from the field, click 'Clear'
- To upload the private key, click the 'Save' button.
- Repeat the above steps to upload the public key.
- To download and save the private and public keys, click the respective download links.

If you do not have the domain key, then follow these steps:

- Select the 'Create New Domainkey' check box.
- Click 'Create' to generate a new domain key for the selected domain.

	Choose Language V English Logout		
DKIM			
Managed Domain Name *	comodo.ordabirbahce.com ~		
Enable DKIM			
Create New Domainkey	Create		
Private Key(Please just upload file which has format .pem key .publickey)	BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY MIICXgIBAAKBgQCwN6d4uE/od2wCfxdhqfulWSuNFLWBHg/RMS+Jfiok10/Qpi/f nm35Rmc9ZrkYb5KFVK8NkhXuTervT8QV2kHFbFfJeJFFA2sAJu91KjYJTkDiOcEF VAOTjwu7mF5pDzE42glwSTihqBHgR5XS3+GqygunC+q3NY3bFuPXRixuPwIDAQAB AoGBAKOfecSxN5I+Ue9bfSV1RZbMXZEJWqOCe2NeDWrYmF9PAdCWjztPi4P76F7u JA5Zgy6EfGrYa76z40LHKSa1W31f0QpJPWdRUvUKg9Hc6EkN48XOr8de78r4ZuGO NqKAEMDjWidfufCQBAIGEnv1meOeqvoHWXIIs+7pr3tDeNeJAkEA2jZzyJnNx8QH 0WHQRRNPXsa5EYCL2ksE4DJPPaguN6TChaBtp39H+QiHIYIeus0m+TCA5PFjaMHF r7QRM/X9dQJBAM67hAMamnIRGWKwDOkqSlf0jEkIo4L4m2/4UqRBXmQmNeN8PJ2J cP+TDi6bgxMa2GWISJnQm0Lbio2W4T0+gmMCQGSskqa0Lx5nFqRHWGtGCWxUirXE dMF1sv4st9peaVRKs2QrK+wHERGYGaAjXI0acUyuUAIQROjj3Wy+yuEKMLECQQCX Download private key_Import		
Public Key(Please just upload file which has format .pem key .publickey)	BEGIN PUBLIC KEY MIGfMA0GCSqGSlb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQCwN6d4uE/od2wCfxdhqfulWSuN FLWBHg/RMS+Jfiok10/Qpi/fnm35Rmc9ZrkYb5KFVK8NkhXuTervT8QV2kHFbFfJ eJFFA2sAJu91KjYJTkDiOcEFVAOTjwu7mF5pDzE42glwSTihqBHgR5XS3+Gqygun C+q3NY3bFuPXRixuPwIDAQAB END PUBLIC KEY		
	Download public key Import		
	Save View DNS register text Cancel		

The domain key will be generated and the same must be entered in the DNS register for authenticating the domain.

WAR	INING 🔀
Your	nust entry following DNS register:
p=	TXT record for BIND: dkimdomainkey.comodo.ordabirbahce.com. IN TXT 'v=DKIM1; k=rsa; l=y; MIGfM40GCSqGSlb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQD9ADv2F0YHgIPg3hzCqERzWn41AKUSeymDEut7B9EBliYmmeJmnxbV3ct3XR3Xyjk+lsx5UVmeWj22xEfdHV /7/X9iqaRir9CX3CxSgWznIdJINJMQIDAQAB"
<	>
	Close

You can view and copy the details of domain key anytime by clicking the 'View DNS register text' link at the bottom. For more details about how to update the DNS record, refer to your domain or web hosting documentation.

4.10 Outgoing SMTP Limits

- Secure Email Gateway lets you limit how many outgoing mails can be sent by a user, or sent from a specific domain.
- You can configure the system to allow a certain number of outgoing mails per hour and per day.
- The interface lets you add domains or usernames individually or in bulk.

To open the 'Outgoing Limits' screen,

· Click the 'SMTP' tab on the left menu, then click 'Outgoing Limits'.

	Choose Language 🔽 English Logout					
Outgoing Limits						
General Settings Usage						
Default Template Loaded Control Add new limit Control Add bulk domain limit Control Add bu	ulk user limit					
Limitation type Limitation object Descriptio	n Limit per-hour Limit per-day Action					
There are no avail	able records.					

The interface allows administrators to:

- · Set outgoing limits for domains and users
- Configure outgoing limits settings
- View outgoing mail usage details for domains and users

Configuring outgoing limits for domains and users

To configure outgoing limits for domains and users:

Click the 'General' tab

				Choose Languag	e 🗸 E	nglish	Log
Outgoing Limits							
General Setting	gs Usage						
Add new limit Add bulk domain limit Add bulk user limit							
Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Action		
Limitation type Domain	Limitation object example.com	Description test	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Action		
Limitation type Domain Username	Limitation object example.com 10.51.108.202	Description test comodo user	Limit per-hour 20 200	Limit per-day 100 1000	Action		

Outgoing Limits: General - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header		Description				
Limitation Type	Indicates v	vhether the limitation is for a domain or user				
Limitation Object	The details	s of the domain or the user				
Description	The descri	The description for the limitation				
Limit per-hour	Indicates t	Indicates the number of outgoing mails allowed per hour				
Limit per-day	Indicates t	he number of outgoing mails allowed per day				
Action		Allows you to delete a limitation set for a domain or user				
	ľ	Allows you to edit a limitation set for a domain or user				

• To set a limitation for a domain or user individually, click the 'Add new limit' link at the top

		<u> </u>		Choose Languag	e	 English 	Logo
Outgoing Limits							
General Setting	gs Usage						
Add new limit O Add bulk domain limit O Add bulk user limit							
			dire user in the				
Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Act	ion	
Limitation type	Limitation object example.com	Description test	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Acti	ion i	
Limitation type Domain Username	Limitation object example.com 10.51.108.202	Description test comodo user	Limit per-hour 20 200	Limit per-day 100 1000	Acti	ion M	

The 'Add outgoing SMTP limit' screen will be displayed.

	Choose Language V English Logout
Add outgoing SMTP lin	nit
Limitation type *	Domain 🗸
Limitation object *	
Description:	
Limit per-hour *	
Limit per-day *	
	Save <u>Cancel</u>

- Limitation type: Select whether you want to configure the limit for a domain or user from the dropdown
- Limitation object: Enter the name of the domain or username depending on your 'Limitation type' selection
- Description: Enter an appropriate description for the limitation
- · Limit per-hour: Enter the number of outgoing mails allowed per hour for a domain or user
- Limit per-day: Enter the number of outgoing mails allowed per day for a domain or user

Click 'Save'. The newly added limitation will be displayed in the list.

• To set a limitation for multiple domains at a time, click the 'Add bulk domain limit' link at the top

				Choose Languag	e v E	nglish	Log
Outgoing Limits							
General Settin	gs Usage						
Add new limit	Add bulk domain li	mit) 🙆 Add b	ulk user limit				
<u> </u>							
Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Action		
Limitation type	Limitation object example.com	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Action		
Limitation type Domain Username	Limitation object example.com 10.51.108.202	Description test comodo user	Limit per-hour 20 200	Limit per-day 100 1000	Action		

The 'Add Bulk outgoing SMTP limit' screen will be displayed.

	Choose Language	e v English	Logou
Add Bulk outgoing SMTP lim	it		
ou must write one domain for each line (max. 500 entries).			
Save Cancel			

- Enter the limitation for each domain per line as per the format shown in the screen..
- Click 'Save'.

The limitations for the added domains will be displayed in the 'General' screen.

• To set a limitation for multiple user at a time, click the 'Add bulk user limit' link at the top

				Choose Languag	e 🗸 Ei	nglish	Logout
Outgoing	Outgoing Limits						
General Settin	gs Usage	·					
O Add new limit	🔇 <u>Add bulk domain li</u>	mit 🕜 Add b	ulk user limit				
Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Action		
Domain	example.com	test	20	100	😧 🗭		
Username	10.51.108.202	comodo user	200	1000	😧 😰		
Username	10.202.51.203	user1	40	400	🖹 🖉		

The 'Add Bulk outgoing SMTP limit' screen will be displayed.

Add Bulk outgoing SMTP limit	Logout
You must write one user for each line (max. 500 entries).	
Save Cancel	
Format: Domain; description; limit-per-hour example1; ex 10	

- Enter the limitation for each user per line as per the format shown in the screen.
- Click the 'Save' button to apply your changes.

The limitations for the added users will be displayed in the 'General' screen.

		<u>^</u>		Choose Languag	e 🗸 E	English and	Logout
Outgoing	Outgoing Limits						
General Settin	gs Usage						
O Add new limit	O Add bulk domain li	imit 💿 Add b	ulk user limit				
Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Action		
Domain	example.com	test	20	100	😧 🗹		
Username	10.51.108.202	comodo user	200	1000	😧 🗹		
Username	10.202.51.203	user1	40	400	😧 🗹		

- To delete a limitation from the list, click the button under the 'Action' column and confirm it in the confirmation screen.
- To edit a limitation, click the 🗹 button under the 'Action' column.

The 'Edit outgoing SMTP limit' screen will be displayed.

	Choose Language V English Logout					
Edit outgoing SMTP limit						
Limitation type	Domain ~					
Limitation object *	example.com					
Description:	test					
Limit per-hour *	20					
Limit per-day *	100					
	Save Cancel					

The screen is similar to the 'Add outgoing SMTP limit' interface. Refer to the section for 'Configuring outgoing limits for domains and users' for more details.

Configuring outgoing limits settings

The 'Settings' tab allows you to customize the limitations added in the 'General' tab.

· To configure outgoing limit settings, click the 'Settings' tab

			 Choose Language	 English 	Log	out
Outgo	oing Li	mits				
General	Settings	Usage				

General	Setungs	Usaye	
SM	TP AUTH is en ne limit for out	abled by us	er I*
Enablett	he Limit for Fro	om Address	²s <mark>↓</mark>
	Defau	It hourly limi	t* 100
	Det	fault daily lin	nit [500
Envelope	e sender must AU	match SMT TH useman	
	D	efault doma	in 10.108.51.202
SMT	IP-AUTH user	name forma	I Username t* ☑ Domain: ● user@domain.com ○ user%domain.com
E	Enable System atification for ex	Admin e-ma	ail ts ☑
		Mail Subje	ct Outgoing Limits Notifie
		Mail Fro	m korumail@comodo.co
		Mail Templa	<pre><!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/loose.dtd"> <html> <head> <meta content="text/html; charset=utf-8" http-equiv="Content-Type"/> <style> body { tont-tamily: Arial, Helvetica, sans-sent; } a { text-decoration: none; } h1 { font-size: 100%; } .mail { font-weight: bold; } #list thead { background-color: #RAAEA8; color: #FFFFFF; } #list tr.even { background-color: #EEEEEE; } #footer { font-size: 11px; text-align: center; } </style> </head></html></pre>
			Merhaba \${sysAdmin} , Giden e-posta limitini gecen hesap listesi
			Save Defaults

	Outgoing Limits: Settings - Table of Parameters								
Parameter	Description								
SMTP AUTH is enabled by user name limit for outgoing email	If enabled, SMTP AUTH is required for outgoing mails sent by users who are configured in the 'General' tab to send limited mails.								
Enable the Limit for From Addresses	If enabled, the limit configured in the 'General' tab will apply. Otherwise, the default hourly and daily values below will apply.								

Default hourly limit	The maximum number of outgoing mails that can be sent by users per hour
Default daily limit	The maximum number of outgoing mails that can be sent by users per day
Envelope sender must match SMTP-AUTH username	If enabled, the address of the sender must match the SMTP-AUTH username
Default domain	The default domain of the outgoing emails.
SMTP-AUTH username format	Method of authenticating the user. Choose from username or domain methods.
Enable System Admin e- mail notification for exceeded limits	Will send a notification if the number of mails sent by users who are configured in the 'General' tab exceeds the limit.
Mail subject	Subject of the notification mail mentioned above.
Mail From	The email address from which the notification mail is sent
Mail Template	The template of the notification mail.

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Viewing outgoing mail usage details for domains and users

The 'Usage' tab allows you to view outgoing mails from users and domains covered by outgoing limits.

					Choose Language	English	Logout		
Outgoing Limit	ts								
General Settings Usa	ige								
	User				Domain				
Name	Time	Total(hourly)	Total(daily)	Name	Time Total(hourly) Total				
	•	•	÷		÷	÷	÷		
test@testcustomer.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	12	0	testcustomer.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	12	0		
	ee e				(c)				

	Outgoing Limits: Usage - Table of Parameters									
	Parameter	Description								
User	Name	Displays the email address of the sender								
	Time	The time at which the mail was sent.								
	Total (Hourly)	The total number of mails sent in an hour.								
	Total (Daily)	The total number of mails sent in a day.								
Domain	Name	Displays the email address of the sender on the limited domain								
	Time	The time at which the mail was sent.								

Total (Hourly)	The total number of mails sent in an hour.
Total (Daily)	The total number of mails sent in a day.

To search for a particular recipient, enter the first few letters of the recipient's name in either the 'User' or 'Domain' search field:

Outgoing Lim	its]
General Settings U	sage						
	User				Domain		
Name	Time	Total(hourly)	Total(daily)	Name	Time	Total(hourly)	Total(daily)
test	÷ (÷	example		÷	+
test@testcustomer.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	12	0		ax x	2 23	
	8K K	98					

Clicking the button in a column header will sort the table in ascending or descending order of the items in the column.

4.11 Incoming SMTP Limits

Secure Email Gateway lets you set limits for incoming mails for users as well as for domain names. Secure Email Gateway can be configured to allow only a certain number of incoming mails per hour and per day. You can add domains/usernames individually or in bulk.

GATEWAY	General Setting	gs Usage							
ystem	Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Acti	ion		
4TP	Domain Domain	comodo.com	test user	20	200	1	2		
SMTP Settings	Domain	example.com	incoming example	10	100	12	3		
RBL.									
REL Disclaimer Relay DKIN Outgoing Limits Incoming Limits									
RBL Disclaimer Retay DKIM Outgoing Limits Incoming Limits Modules									
RBL Disclaimer Relay DKIM Outgoing Limits Incoming Limits Nodules Profile Management									
REL Disclaimer Relay DKIM Outgeing Limits Incoming Limits Modules Profile Management Reports									

• Click 'SMTP' > 'Incoming Limits' to open this screen The interface allows you to:

Configuring Incoming limits for domains and users

- Configure Incoming limits settings
- View Incoming mail usage details for domains and users

Configuring Incoming limits for domains and users

• Click 'SMTP' > 'Incoming Limits' then click the 'General' tab

								Choose Language 🔍 English	Logout
I	ncoming	Limits							
٢	General Settin	gs Usage							
	Add new limit								
	Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Act	ion		
	Domain	comodo.com	test user	20	200		X		
	Domain	example.com		600	60000		7		
	Domain	example.com	incoming example	10	100		2		

	Incoming Limits: General - Table of Column Descriptions							
Column Header	Column Header Description							
Limitation Type	Indicates v	dicates whether the limit is for a domain or user						
Limitation Object	The domai	n or user to which the limit applies						
Description	Text summ	ary of the limitation						
Limit per-hour	The numb	er of incoming mails allowed per hour						
Limit per-day	The numb	er of incoming mails allowed per day						
Action		Delete a limitation						
	Edit a limitation							

The 'Add Incoming Limit' screen will open:

•

								Choose Language	~	English	Logout
I	ncoming	Limits									
Γ	General Settin	gs Usage									
C	Add new limit)									
	Limitation type	Limitation object	Description	Limit per-hour	Limit per-day	Act	ion				
	Domain	comodo.com	test user	20	200		8				
	Domain	example.com		600	60000		1				
	Domain	example.com	incoming example	10	100		7				

The 'Add Incoming Limit' screen will be displayed.

- Limitation type: Select whether you want to configure the limit for a domain or a user
- Limitation object: Enter the name of the domain or username depending on your 'Limitation type' selection
- **Description:** Enter an appropriate description for the limitation
- · Limit per-hour: Enter the number of outgoing mails allowed per hour for a domain or user
- Limit per-day: Enter the number of outgoing mails allowed per day for a domain or user

Click 'Save'. The newly added limitation will be displayed in the list.

The limitations for the added users will be displayed in the 'General' screen.

- To delete a limitation from the list, click the 🔯 button under the 'Action' column and confirm it in the confirmation screen.
- To edit a limitation, click the *i* button under the 'Action' column.

The 'Edit Incoming Limit' screen will be displayed.

	Choose Language V English Logout					
Edit Incoming Limit						
Limitation type	Domain ~					
Limitation object *	comodo.com					
Description:	test user					
Limit per-hour *	20					
Limit per-day *	200					
Save Cancel						

The screen is similar to the 'Add Incoming Limit' interface. Refer to the section for 'Configuring incoming limits for domains and users' for more details.

Configuring Incoming limits settings

The 'Settings' tab in the 'Incoming Limits' screen allows you to configure the settings such that the Secure Email Gateway server sends an automated email when the incoming limits exceed the set limitations added in the 'General' tab. Please note that the email content will be available in the Secure Email Gateway console by default.

• To configure incoming limit settings, click the 'Settings' tab

	Choose Language V English	L L
coming Limits		
neral <mark>Settings</mark> Usage		
Default Template Loaded		
Enable System Admin e-mail notification for exceeded limits		
Mail Subject	Sender Limits Notifica	
Mail From	korumail@ip-172-31-	
Mail Template	<pre><!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"</td> <td></td></pre>	

Incoming Limits: Settings - Table of Parameters						
Parameter	Description					
Enable System Admin e- mail notification for exceeded limits	Will send a notification if the number of mails sent by users who are configured in the 'General' tab exceeds the limit.					
Mail subject	Subject of the notification mail mentioned above.					
Mail From	The email address from which the notification mail is sent					
Mail Template	The template of the notification mail.					

Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Viewing incoming mail usage details for domains and users

The 'Usage' tab in the 'Incoming Limits' screen allows you to view the emails details of the 'Users' and 'Domains'. The parameters that can be viewed via the usage screen for 'Users' and 'Domains' are 'Name'(Name of the recipient), 'Time'(The time and date of the incoming email) and Hourly and daily based count of incoming emails.

					Choose Language	English	Logout		
ncoming Limits									
General Settings Usage									
Default Template Loaded	Default Template Loaded								
	User			Domain					
Name	Time	Total(hourly)	Total(daily)	Name	Time	Total(hourly)	Total(daily)		
	•	•	•		•	•			
test@testcustomer.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	12	0	test@korumail.tk	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	9	0		
test@example.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	7	0	test@example.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	7	0		
test@korumail.tk	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	9	0	test@testcustomer.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	12	0		
	KK K 31	3N			40° 4 X	**			

Incoming Limits: Usage - Table of Parameters							
Pa	rameter	Description					
User	Name	Displays the email address of the recipient.					
	Time	The time at which the mail is received.					
	Total(Hourly)	The total number of emails received in an hour.					
	Total(Daily)	The total number of emails received in a day.					
Domain	Name	Displays the email address of the recipient on the limited domain.					
	Time	The time at which the mail is received.					
	Total(Hourly)	The total number of emails received in an hour.					
	Total(Daily)	The total number of emails received in a day.					

To 'Search' for a particular incoming recipient,

• Enter the first few alphabets of the recipient's name, in the usage details of 'User' and 'Domain'.

					Choose Language	 English 	Logout
Incoming Limit	s						
General Settings Usage							
Default Template Loaded							
	User				Domain		
Name	Time	Total(hourly)	Total(daily)	Name	Time	Total(hourly)	Total(daily)
еха	> •	-	<	ko) :	÷	÷
test@example.com	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	7	0	test@korumail.tk	2018-07-24 10:00:00.0	9	0
0	ee a 3		EE E 3	33			

The intended recipient name will be displayed.

Clicking the
 button, you can view the bottom-most or top-most recipients.

5 Modules

- The 'Modules' area lets you configure the core security components of Secure Email Gateway's email defense system.
- The 'Anti-spam' module lets you configure anti-spam settings, containment, auto-whitelists, authorized trainers, content filters and more.
- See the links under the screenshot for more information on each module

					Choose	Language • English	Log		
SECURE EMAIL	Anti-sp	am							
	Anti-spam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	Bayesian Training	Content Filter	Signature Whitelist			
System	Attachment	Filter							
SMTP			atta tan araa (8						
Modules		Enable In	nable Anti-spam 🕑						
Anti-spam		Enable Ham Mail Auto Trainer							
Anti-virus KRN®		Save							
Anti-spoofing	Training D	estination Addresses					· · · · · · · · ·		
Auto Whitelist		SPAM T	raining Address:	spamtrain Ødem	o-das.cdome.net				
Containment System		CLEAN T	raining Address:	hamtrain @dem	o-das.cdome.net				
DLP				Update					
Attachment Verdict System		The original e-mail subject to spam training should be sent as an attachment (attachment name should only contain English characters).							
Profile Management			Please refer to the relation	ed Profile Settings for more d	etailed options.				
Reports		Copyright® 2006-2019 Dome Antispam name and	Comodo Security Solution Llogo are trademarks of Co	s, Inc. All rights reserved. nodo Security Solutions, Inc.					
Quarantine & Archive			Release: 6.7.9.5f060ec						

Click the following links for more details:

- Anti-spam
- Anti-Virus
- Reputation Network (KRN)
- Anti-Spoofing
- SMTP IPS/FW
- Auto Whitelist
- Containment System
- Data Leak Prevention (DLP)
- Attachment Verdict System

5.1 Anti-spam

- The anti-spam module lets you configure general and advanced settings, define authorized persons who
 can submit mail for spam training, upload material for Bayesian spam and HAM training, and add content
 filters.
- Secure Email Gateway uses our huge anti-spam database to accurately assign a spam-probability score to each message.
 - Depending on this score, the email is categorized as 'OK' (default = 40 points or below), 'Probable Spam' (default = 40-50 points), 'Spam' (default = 50-100 points) or 'Certainly Spam' (default = 100

points and above).

- The anti-spam module must be enabled in order to activate the parameters in the profile settings. See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.
- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-spam' to open the interface.

		^				Choo	se Language 🔍 Engli	sh 📕	Logout
Anti-sp	bam								
Anti-spam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	.	Bayesian Training	Conten	t Filter	Signature Whitelist		
Attachment	Filter								
	Enable Anti-spam								
	Enable	Image Spam Filter	\checkmark						
	Enable Ham Disk backup optior	n Mail Auto Training n must be enabled.							
				Save					
Training De	stination Addresses								
	SPA	M Training Address:		spamtrain (@ip-172-31-2	25-154			
	CLEAN Training Address:			hamtrain (@ip-172-31-2	25-154			
	Update								
	The original e-mail subject to spam training should be sent as an attachment (attachment name should only contain English characters).								
		Please refer to the	e relati	led Profile Settings for	more detailed	options.			

See the following sections for more details:

- Anti-spam General Settings
- Authorized Trainers
- Advanced Anti-spam Settings
- Bayesian Training
- Content Filter
- Signature Whitelist

5.1.1 Anti-spam General Settings

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-spam' then the 'Anti-spam' tab
- From here, you can enable/disable the anti-spam engine, the image spam filter and the Ham trainer.
- The anti-spam module must be enabled in order to activate the anti-spam parameters specified in profile settings. See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.

				Choo	se Language 🖂 Engli	sh Logou			
Anti-spam									
Anti-spam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	Bayesian Training	Content Filter	Signature Whitelist				
Attachment	Filter								
		Enable Anti-spam 🗹							
	Enable	Image Spam Filter 🗹							
	Enable Han Disk backup optio	n Mail Auto Training n must be enabled.							
Save									
Training De	stination Addresses								
	SPA	M Training Address:	spamtrain @	ip-172-31-25-154					
CLEAN Training Address:			hamtrain @	ip-172-31-25-154					
Update									
	The	original e-mail subject (attachment name	to spam training should should should only contain En	l be sent as an attac glish characters).	chment				
		Please refer to the re	lated Profile Settings for m	ore detailed options.					

Anti-spam General Settings - Table of Parameters						
Parameter	Description					
Enable Anti-spam	Select this to activate the anti-spam filtering engine.					
	 The anti-spam parameters specified in the profile settings will be activated only if this setting is enabled here. 					
	See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.					
Enable Image Spam Filter	 Image based spam mails is when spam messages are embedded into images. This is designed to bypass text-based filters. Secure Email Gateway is capable of filtering image based emails also. Select this check box to activate the image spam filter. 					
Enable Ham Mail Auto Training	 Ham is the opposite of spam. They are legitimate mails that you wish to allow. Secure Email Gateway can be trained to identify safe emails to accuracy/reduce false positives. Select this check box to activate the clean email training feature. 					
Training Destination Add	resses					
SPAM Training Address	The address to which junk mail should be sent to train the engine.					
	 Enter the username part of the address. Mail you forward to this address will be analyzed by CSEG as an example of spam. 					
CLEAN Training Address	The address to which safe emails should be sent to train the engine.					
	Enter the username part of the address. Mail you forward to this address will be analyzed by CSEG as an example of legitimate mail.					

• Click 'Save' and 'Update' to apply your changes.

5.1.2 Authorized Trainers

- Click the 'Authorized Trainers' tab in the Anti-spam interface, to open the 'Authorized Traines' screen
- Allows you to define the sources from which spam training emails can be sent.
- Submitting sample junk mail to Secure Email Gateway allows the system to learn, adapt and protect against new spam types.
- Training content will only be accepted from the sources you specify here.

enam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced S	ttinge	Ravoeian Trair	ning	Content Filter	Signatura Whit	taliet	
-shaili	Autorized framers	Auvaliceu Se	stunds	bayesiali Irai	inity	content Filter	Signature with	tenat	
chment Fi	ter		susususus		auananana				3030
thorized T	ainers								
						and a stand of the spectrum.			
	Send I	nformation Mess	sage 🗹						
Туре	Value			Description	Add				
E-mail 🗸					4				
C	example@com	odo.com			-				
E-mail	hamtraining@comodo.com				_				
E-mail	hamtraining@cor	modo.com							

Authorized Trainers - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header	Description					
Туре	Indicates the type of source of authorized trainers. The options available are Email, IPv4 and IPv6.					
Value	The details of the source ID					
Description	The description for the authorized trainer					
Add	÷	Allows you to add a source ID after filling the fields in the row				
	-	Allows you to delete an authorized trainer from the list				

 Send Information Message: If enabled, will send a notification to the new trainer to inform them they have been added as a trainer.(Default - Disabled)

To add an authorized trainer

- Select the type of source from the options Email, IPv4 or IPv6.
- Enter the source ID in the 'Value' field. This depends on the 'Type' selected.
- Provide an appropriate description for the authorized trainer in the 'Description' field.
- Click the
 button.

The authorized trainer will be added and listed in the table.

To remove an authorized trainer

• Click the — button beside an entry that you want to remove.



• Click 'OK' to confirm the removal of an authorized trainer.

5.1.3 Advanced Anti-spam Settings

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-spam' then the 'Advanced Settings' tab
- The 'Advanced Settings' screen lets you to configure language settings.
- Languages you select here will be analyzed for spam using the Bayesian spam classifier.

ti-spam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	Bayesian Training	Content Filter Signature Whitelist
chment	Filter			
			Available Languages	Selected Languages
			Afrikaans	^
			Albanian	H Copy all
	A	ccepted Languages	Arabic	a Renove
			Armenian	HI Remove AB
			Basque	·

Accepted Languages:

- The languages for which the Bayes spam engine should analyze the emails for spam.
- By default, a set of predefined languages is selected.
- To remove a language from the list, select it and click 'Remove All'.
- To move a language to the right side, select it and click 'Copy All'.

Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

5.1.4 Bayesian Training

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-spam' then the 'Bayesian Training' tab
- The Bayesian engine analyzes emails for patterns which may indicate that the mail is spam.

 You can upload sample spam and HAM (legitimate) emails in order to 'train' the engine to provide more accurate verdicts.

Anti-sp	bam			Choo	se Language 🛛 🗸 Engli:	sh Logou
Anti-spam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	Bayesian Training	Content Filter	Signature Whitelist	
Attachment I	Filter					
Bayesian Tr	aining					
		SPAM Training	Browse			
		HAM Training	Browse			

- SPAM Training: Allows to upload spam content to train the Bayesian spam engine
- HAM Training: Allows to upload safe content to train the Bayesian spam engine

To upload content

Click 'Browse'

Select file	
🕂 Upload	
(Supported Types: .eml, .gz, .zip)	<i>a</i>
Save Close	

 Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the content is saved and click 'Open'. (Note: Only .eml, .gz and .zip file formats are supported)

elect file	
🕂 Upload	🗙 Clear All
C:\fakepath\ruleset.zip Done	<u>Clear</u>
Supported Types: .eml, .gz, .zip)	
Save Close	

- Repeat the process to add more files
- To remove a file from the list, click the 'Clear' link beside it

- To remove all the files from the list, click the 'Clear All' button at the top
- To upload the files, click the 'Save' button

5.1.5 Content Filter

The content filter can detect words and patterns of words in an email then mark those messages as spam.

• Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-spam' then the 'Content Filter' tab:

					_	Choose Language	✓ English	Log	out
Anti-	spam								
Anti-spar	m Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settin	igs	Bayesian Training	Content Filt	ter Signature W	hitelist		
Attachm	Attachment Filter								
O Add C	ontent Filter 🙀 Delete All								
Active	Filter	Pattern		Description	Action				
٢	Unparliamentary Words	Offensive Words Tes	st Filter	Descriminatory word	s 🙀 🗹				
		Please refer to t	the relate	d Profile Settings for more	e detailed optio	uns.			

Content Filter - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header		Description				
Active	Shows wh	Shows whether the content filter is enabled or disabled				
Filter Pattern	The conte	The content type which will be detected.				
Action		Delete the filter				
	Ĩ	Edit the filter				

The interface allows administrators to:

- Add a new content filter
- Edit a content filter
- Delete a content filter

To add a new content filter

• Click the 'Add Content Filter' link at the top.

nti-	spam			Choo	se Language 🛛 🗸 Englist	
Anti-spar	n Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	Bayesian Training	Content Filter	Signature Whitelist	
Attachme	ontent Filter					
Active	Filter	Pattern	Description	Action		
			- Description	- B C		

The 'New Content Filter' screen will be displayed.

New Content Filter	Log	out
Active		
Filter Pattern * You must define at least one pattern.	AND AND	
Description *		
	Save <u>Cancel</u>	

- Active: Select the check box to enable the content filter
- Filter Pattern: Enter the words or combination of words that should be checked and mark the email as spam.
- Description: Enter an appropriate name for the content filter

Click 'Save'. The newly added filter will be listed in the screen.

To edit a content filter

• Click the 🗹 button beside a filter that you want to edit.

	Choose Language	English Logout
New Content Filter		
Active		
Filter Pattern * You must define at least one pattern.	Unparliamentary Words Offensive Words Test Filter	AND AND
Description *	Descriminatory words	
	Save Cancel	

The 'Edit Content Filter' screen will be displayed.

· Edit the content filter as required and click 'Save'

To delete a content filter

Click the 😟 button beside a filter that you want to remove



Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion of the filter

5.1.6 Signature Whitelist

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-spam' then click the 'Signature Whitelist' tab.
- SEG uses a blacklist of spam signatures to detect junk mail and spam.
- SEG will block messages that have a signature which matches a signature on the blacklist.
- If don't want this system to apply to a specific email address or domain, then you can add the signature to the whitelist.
- Mails with whitelisted signatures will be allowed through.
- You need to go into the mail logs interface to add signatures to the whitelist.

	Anti-spam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	Bayesian Training	Content Filter	Signature Whitelist
stem		Signature Desi	cription	Action	1.1	
TP		http://www.marin	gold.com/	12		
lules			Please refer to the relation	ed Profile Settings for mor	e detailed options.	
Anti-virus KRN© Anti-spoofing SMTP IPS/FW Auto Whitelist Containment System DLP Promotional Attachment Verdict System		Cone Antispan name an	Release: 6.7.1.8972932	noo secony sources, n	κ.	
ofile Management						
orts						

To whitelist emails in 'Mail Logs':

Click 'Mail Logs' from reports menu.

Ma	Choose Language C English Logour								
			Search	Clear Advanced search		@ Last II	onth O Last 2 Norths	C Last 3 Hor	nthe O Last 6 Months O All Times
	ubject 🗆 Sender 🗆 R	ecpients	9 P						
Actie	is v Dol							Find Previous	Page1 /2250 Pecords per page Next Last
	Subject	Result e	Received e	Sender •	Recipier	(s) e	IP		Details •
0		BLY ERR.	25/07/2018 03:05:51	spameri@tiscal.it	spameri@tiscal	æ	204.188.205.187	Relay em	on Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Mis:
0		RUY ERR	25/07/2018 02:50:18	spameri@tiscal.it	spameri@tiscal	.a	89.197.1.54	30 Relay em	on Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Mis-
0		RLY ERR	24/07/2018 22:27:14	spameri@tiscali.it	spameri@tiscal	s.	192.110.157.9	🎫 Relay em	on Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Mis-
e	(II PROGABLE SPAM)Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2010 10:57:12	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustor	101.0011	213.14.70.194	Cassified	as probable spam Score: 45.0
4	(II PROBABLE SPAN)Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2018 10:57:10	test@korumeil.tk	test@testcustor	1er.com	213.14.70.194	📴 Classified	as probable spam Score: 45.0
🖌 🗧	(!! PROSABLE SPAN]Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2018 10:57:05	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustor	1en com	213.14.70.194	Classified	as probable spam Score: 45.0
4	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2018 10:57:07	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustor	1e5.com	213.14.70.194	Classified	as probable spam Score: 45.0
¥ -	[II PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2018 10:57:05	test@korumail.tk	best@testcustor	1er.com	213.14.70.194	Classified	as probable spam Score: 45.0
* -	[II PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming L	I PSPAM	24/07/2010 10:57:03	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustor	1er.com	213.14.70.194	🔯 Classified	as probable spam Score: 45.0
4	(II PROBABLE SPAM)Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2016 10:57:02	test@korumeil.tk	test@testcustor	1er.com	213.14.70.194	🔯 Classified	as probable spam Score: 43.0
¥ 8	(!! PROSABLE SPAM)Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2018 10:37:00	test@korumeil.tk	best@testcustor	1en.com	213.14.70.194	📴 Clessified	as probable spam Score: 43.0
*	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming L	PSPAM	24/07/2018 10:56:57	test@korumail.tk	best@testcustor	1e5.com	213.14.70.194	Classified	as probable spam Score: 45.0
40	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:56:27	test@testcustomer.com	test@korumail.	ic.	213.14.70.194	e.	
💙 0	Incoming Limit	OK .	24/07/2018 10:56:24	test@testcustomer.com	test@korumail.	k:	212.14.70.194	(P)	
🥩 Q	Incoming Limit	OK .	24/07/2018 10:56:23	test@testcustomer.com	test@korumail.	k	213.14.70.194	8	
🖌 👌	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:56:21	test@testcustomer.com	test@korumeil/	k	213.14.70.194	8	
🛩 Q	Incoming Limit	OK.	24/07/2018 10:56:18	test@testcustomer.com	test@korumail.	k.	213.14.70.194	184 I	
🛩 o	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:56:15	test@testcustomer.com	test@korumail.	ic .	213.14.70.194	e.	
🧳 O	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:54:51	testigtestcustomer.com	test@example.	om	212.14.70.194	1	
🛩 o	Incoming Limit	OK .	24/07/2018 10:54:49	test@testcustomer.com	test@example.	m	213.14.70.194	8	
🧡 Q	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:54:48	test@testcustomer.com	test@example.	om.	213.14.70.194	6	
4	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:54:46	test@testcustomer.com	test@example.	mo	213.14.70.194	6	
🥐 o	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:54:44	test@testcustomer.com	test@example.	mo	213.14.70.194	100 C	
🔶 o	Incoming Limit	OK	24/07/2018 10:54:42	test@testcustomer.com	test@example.	om	213.14.70.194	100	
								G Cambad	

- Click the 'Advanced search' link.
- Select 'Result' from the first drop down.
- Select 'EQUALS' from the second drop down and then choose 'CERTAINLY SPAM'.

lail Logs 🛛 🕅				
	🦔 🏟			
Received	25/07/2018 02:50:18			
Queue ID	ueue ID 19759-1532487018-533437			
Message ID				
Action	0			
Result	RELAY ERROR			
Score	0.0			
Sender	spameri@tiscali.it 🛛 Add Email In Black List 🗸 😒			
Recipient(s)	spameri@tiscali.t			
RFC2822 Sender				
RFC2822 Recipient(s)				
Subject				
IP	89.197.1.54 Add Black List 🗸 📑			
Location	London, England, United Kingdom			
Size	0			
Matched Profile	Default Incoming Profile (defined by user: admin)			
Details	Relay error: Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Missing SMTP AUTH configuration			
Relayed	No			
Close				
Select 'Add email to Whitelist' in sender field and 'Add Whitelist' in IP field. Next, choose the email that
you need to whitelist and click the 'Add White Signature Lists' link.

The email will automatically populate in the 'Signature Whitelist' tab in Anti-spam' module.

5.1.7 Attachment Filter

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-spam' > 'Attachment Filter' tab.
- This area lets you define how many archive levels should be checked by Secure Email Gateway.
 - For example, a zip file may contain another zip file inside it. A depth of '2' means Secure Email Gateway will check inside both files. However, if the 2nd zip contains another zip inside it, then Secure Email Gateway will block the entire attachment.

				Choos	se Language 🔍 Englis	sh Logo
Anti-sp	am					
Anti-spam	Authorized Trainers	Advanced Settings	Bayesian Training	Content Filter	Signature Whitelist	
Attachment I	ilter					
Maximum d	epth for archive files for at	tachment analysis * 10				
		Save				
		Please refer to the rel	lated Profile Settings for mo	ore detailed options.		

- **Maximum depth for archive files for attachment analysis**: Max. archive levels that will be analyzed. Enter the maximum number of nested archives which should be opened and examined for data-leak infringements. If an archive contains more sub-archives than this threshold then the entire attachment will be blocked.
- Click 'Save' to apply your choice.

5.2 Anti-Virus

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-virus' to open this interface
- Secure Email Gateway is capable of virus scanning all emails that pass through its engine. Comodo Antivirus is built into the system.
- The antivirus module must be enabled to activate the antivirus settings in a profile. See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.

	Anti-virus	Choose Language 💽 English Logout
	Ceneral Settings Advanced Settings	
 System 	Enable A	Anti-virus 🖉
▶ SMTP	Virus	s Scanner Comodo Anti-virus V
* Modules		Sava
Anti-spam	Please refe	er to the related Profile Settings for more detailed options.
Anti-spoofing SMTP IPS/FW Auto Whitelist Containment System DLP Attachment Verdict System	Copyright& 2006-2019 Comodo Dome Antispam name and logo are Relear	o Security Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved. + trademarks of Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. se: 6.7.9.9060ec
 Profile Management 		
Reports		
Quarantine & Archive		

See the following sections for more details:

- Anti-Virus General Settings
- Advanced Anti-Virus Settings

5.2.1 Anti-Virus General Settings

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-virus' > 'General Settings' to open this interface
- General settings let you enable/disable the AV module and select which AV engine you wish to use.
- The antivirus module must be enabled to activate the AV parameters in profile settings. See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.
- Click 'Antivirus' > 'General Settings' to open this interface.

	Anti-virus						Choose Language	English	Logou
	General Settings	Advanced Settings							
System		Feat	lo Anti vinus						1
SMTP		LINAL	ite Anu-virus	Comodo	Antiutrus				
Modules			intes scenner	Comodo	Farmer and a				
Anti-mam		Plassa		lated free	Save		lad antique		
Anti-span		Please	reter to the re	Hated Pro	rile setting	gs for more deta	led options.		
KRN# Anti-spoofing SMTP IPS/FW Auto Whitelist Containment System DLP Attachment Verdict System	t	Copyright 2006-2018 Cor Jorne Anlispam name and log: F	nodo Security S are trademarks lelease: 6,7,9,5f	olutions, Inc of Carnodo 06Dec	: All rights ro Security So	eserved. olutions, Inc.			
Profile Management									
Reports									
Quarantine & Archive									

	Anti-virus General Settings - Table of Parameters				
Parameter	Description				
Enable Anti-virus	Select this to activate the anti-virus scanning engine.				
	• The anti-virus parameters specified in the profile settings will be activated only if this setting is enabled here.				
	• See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.				
Virus Scanner	Select the AV program from the drop-down that should be used for scanning the emails.				
	The AV program available for selection is Comodo AV.				

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

5.2.2 Advanced Anti-Virus Settings

- Click 'Modules' > 'Anti-virus' > 'Advanced Settings' to open this interface
- The 'Advanced Settings' screen lets you configure granular settings like the the max size of email+attachments that should be scanned.
- Please note that if the maximum size is surpassed then the antivirus filter for the particular email will not be applied.

General Settings	Advanced Settings				
	Max Mail Size *	25	MB		
	Max Threads Number *	10			
	Time Out*	120			
	Max Directory Recursion *	15			
	Max Files *	10000			
	Max Scan Size *	100	MB		
	Scan OLE2 File				
	Scan PDF File				
	Enable Phishing Signature checks	\checkmark			
	Enable Phishing URL Checks	\checkmark			
	Phishing Action	Discard \lor			
	Quarantine phishing Mails				
	Scan Archive Files	\checkmark			

	Anti-virus Advanced Settings - Table of Parameters
Parameter	Description
Max Mail Size	The maximum email size (message + attachments) that should be scanned.
Max Threads Number	The maximum number of email threads in a email that should be scanned.
Time Out	The AV scanning time in seconds for an email.
Max Directory Recursion	Maximum number of sub-directories or nested archives that will be scanned. If an archive contains more than this threshold then the attachment will be blocked.
Max Files	Maximum number of files that can be scanned within an archive or email.
Max Scan Size	Maximum amount of data (specified value set) scanned for each input file. Archived files are scanned till the Antivirus scanner reaches the set value.
Scan OLE2 File	If enabled, AV scan is run for OLE2 file formats.
Scan PDF File	If enabled, AV scan is run for PDF file formats.
Enable Phishing Signature checks	If enabled, AV scanner checks for phishing email signature
Enable Phishing URL checks	If enabled, AV scanner checks for emails that originated from phishing URLs
Phishing Action	You can reject or accept invalid recipients.
Quarantine Phishing Mails	If enabled, the AV scanner will place phishing emails in quarantine. Quarantined mails can be accessed by users through the webmail interface.
Scan Archive Files	If enabled, archived mails will also be scanned. The types of mail that should be archived and their related settings are configured in profile settings. See ' Profile Management ' for more details about profile settings.

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide | © 2020 Comodo Security Solutions Inc. | All rights reserved.

- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.
- To restore the default 'Anti-virus Advanced Settings' value, click the 'Default' button.

5.3 Korumail Reputation Network (KRN)

- Click 'Modules' > 'KRN®' to open this interface
- Korumail reputation network is an IP scoring system developed by Comodo. The system helps Secure Email Gateway accurately classify mail sent from IP addresses in the network.
- It not only includes traditional features such as real-time IP blacklists (RBL), but also has 'whitelist' and 'greylisting' features.

				Choose Language	• English	Log
	KRN®					
	Servers Settings					
ystem	Reputation Network® Servers					
TP						
lules	Reputation Network® Server	Description	Enabled			
	Km.korumaii.com Koru	IMail Reputation Network	122			
u-spam						
u-virus	Copyright® 2006-2019 C Dome Antispam name and lo	omodo Security Solutions, Inc. ogo are trademarks of Comodo S	All rights reserved. Security Solutions, Inc.			
isenantina		Release: 6.7.9.51060ec				
TP IPS/FW						
to Whitelist						
tainment System						
chment Verdict rem						
file Management						
orts						

The interface allows admins to:

- Enable / disable a KRN server
- Configure KRN settings

To enable / disable a KRN server

A newly added KRN server will be enabled by default.

• To switch a KRN server between enabled and disabled statuses, click the 'Yes' or 'No' link under the 'Enabled' column.

			Choose Language 🗸 English
KRN®			
Servers Settings			
Reputation Network® Servers			
Reputation Network® Server	Description	Enabled	
krn.korumail.com	KoruMail Reputation Network	Yes	

KRN Settings

- The settings interface lets you enable/disable KRN blacklist and whitelist scans.
- These scans must be enabled if you wish to take advantage of the KRN features in profile settings.
- See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.

The 'Settings' tab in KRN module allows you to:

- Enable / disable KRN blacklist scan
- Enable / disable KRN whitelist scan

To enable / disable DARN blacklist scan

Click the 'Settings' tab in the KRN®' interface

	Choose Language V English Logout
KRN®	
Servers Settings	
Enable Reputation Network® Blacklist Scan	
Enable Reputation Network® Whitelist Scan	
Enable Korumail Reputation Network® Whitelist Triplet Scan	
	Save

- Select / deselect the 'Enable Reputation Network® Blacklist Scan' check box to activate or deactivate the KRN blacklist scan
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

To enable / disable KRN whitelist scan

Click the 'Settings' tab in the KRN®' interface

<u> </u>	Choose Language V English Logout
KRN®	
Servers Settings	
Enable Reputation Network® Blacklist Scan	M
Enable Reputation Network® Whitelist Scan	
Enable Korumail Reputation Network® Whitelist Triplet Scan	
	Save

- Select / deselect the 'Enable Reputation Network® Whitelist Scan' check box to activate or deactivate the KRN whitelist scan
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

To enable / disable KRN whitelist Triplet scan

- Click the 'Settings' tab in the KRN®' interface
- Secure Email Gateway can scan the sender address, domain and IP tuple address list by enabling this option

	Choose Language V English
KRN®	
Servers Settings	
Enable Reputation Network® Blacklist Scan 🗹	
Enable Reputation Network® Whitelist Scan	
Enable Korumail Reputation Network® Whitelist Triplet Scan	
Sav	/e

- Select / deselect the 'Enable Reputation Network® Whitelist Triplet Scan' check box to activate or deactivate the KRN whitelist triplet scan
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

5.4 Anti-Spoofing

- · Click the 'Modules' tab on the left, then click 'Anti-spoofing', to open the 'Anti-spoofing' interface
- Email spoofing is a technique used to forge email headers so that the message appears to originate from a source other than the true sender.
- Email spoofing is possible because SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) being the main protocol used in sending emails, does not include an authentication mechanism.
- The 'Anti-Spoofing' feature in Secure Email Gateway prevents spammers from sending messages with falsified 'From' addresses from your protected domains.
 - It uses SPF records, which is a type of DNS record that identifies which servers are permitted to send
 emails on behalf of the protected domains.
- Secure Email Gateway allows you to add a range of IP addresses for a protected domain, which an MTA (Mail Transfer Agent) can look up to confirm whether an email is being sent from an authorized server.

		Choose Language	 Englis 	h 📕 '	Logou
Anti-spoofing					
Anti-spoofing					
Enable Anti-Spoofing 🗹 Choose Domain 🛛 arda	com 🗸 💽				
Domain Name	IP Address		Act	ion	
test.com	1.2.3.4/32		X	Export	
bulut.ml	1.2.3.4/32		😰 💽	Export	
comodo.ordabirbahce.com	1.2.3.5/32 1.2.3.4/32		X	Export	

Select the 'Enable Anti-Spoofing' check box to add IP addresses for your domains.

Anti-Spoofing - Table of Column Descriptions							
Column Header		Description					
Domain Name	Displays th	Displays the name of the protected domain					
IP Address	Displays IF	Displays IP range added for the domain					
Action		Delete the selected domain					
	ľ	Edit the domain IP address					
	Export	Allows to export the IP address for a domain					

The interface allows administrators to:

- Add IP range for a domain
- Edit IP range for a domain
- Delete a domain name from the list
- Export the list of IP addresses

To add an IP range for a domain

- Select the 'Enable Anti-Spoofing' option
- Select the domain for which you want to add the IP range

			Choose Language	~ E	nglis	h	
nti-spoofing							
Anti-spoofing							
Enable Anti Spoofe							
Enable Anti-Spooning							
Choose Domain	arda.com						
	arda.com						
Domain Name	bilisim.ml	IP Address			Act	tion	
test.com	example.com			X		Export	
bulut.ml	ilvas.com			1		Export	
	mydomain.com			. he	~		
comodo.ordabirbahce.	office365domain.com			M	(X	Export	
	outlook.com						
Copyrig	pala.com	y Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.					
Dome Antis	test2domain.com	arks of Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. 1.8972932					
	testcustomer.com						
	testdomain.com						
	testtest.com						
	yahoo.com						
	yandex.com						
	yen.com						
	yopmai.com						

• Click the 📑 button

The 'Anti-spoofing Edit' screen will be displayed.

	Choose	Language	~	English	Logout
Anti-spoofing Edit					
arda.com					
Write IP adresses which properly below example.					
Import Save Delete all Cancel					
Example:					
1.2.3.4					
1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4/5					

- To add the IP range manually, enter the address each per line in the field and click the 'Save' button.
- To import from a saved file, click the 'Import' link

Import	
Please select file in .txt format	
🕂 Upload	
Save Close	

Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'

ease select file in .txt format	
🕂 Upload	🗙 Clear All
C:\fakepath\IP_List.txt Done	<u>Clear</u>
Save Close	

- Repeat the process to add more files to the list.
- To remove a file from the list, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the files, click 'Clear All' at the top.
- Click 'Save'

_ <u>_</u>	Choose Language	✓ English		Logout
Anti-spoofing Edit			_	
Write IP adresses which properly below example.				
1.2.3.4/32				
.:: Import Save Delete all Cancel Example: 1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4 1.2.3.4				

- Click 'Delete all' to remove all the addresses and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.
- Click 'Save' to add the IP addresses for the domain.

To edit IP range for a domain

Click the dotted button under the 'Action' column beside a domain name that you want to edit the IP addresses.

The 'Anti-spoofing Edit' screen will be displayed.

• Edit the address as required and click the 'Save' button.

To delete a domain from the list

• To delete a domain name from the list, click the 🔯 button under the 'Action' column and confirm it in the confirmation screen.

To export the list of IP addresses for a domain

· Click the 'Export' link under the 'Action' column

	Act	ion
ľ		Export
1		Export

• The SPF IP list will be downloaded as a text file to your system.

5.5 SMTP IPS/FW

- Click the 'Modules' tab > 'SMTP IPS/FW'.
- Secure Email Gateway's SMTP Intrusion Prevention System (IPS) and Firewall (FW) module provide protection against Denial of Service (DoS) and SYN attacks.
- SYN attacks are dealt with using SYN Cookies and SYN Cache features.
- DoS attacks are blocked by deploying various usage limitations.
- For example, Secure Email Gateway can limit the number of connections it accepts in a certain time-period. The IPS/FW module will block IPs that want make more connections more than the limit. You can specify the limit in a security profile.
- The module also lets you create whitelist and block rules to better control spam. The rate control feature, a
 subset of the DoS protection system, allows you to control how many connections are allowed within the
 specified time from the same IP address.

	General	Whitelist	Blocked	Rate Control					
tem	Enab	le SMTP IPS/	FW (Intrusion Pri	evention) Modi	de 🗷				
dulor						Save			
oures	Status		Security Profi	le	Activate	Edit			
ti-spam		Permiss	ive		0	3			
NR NR	4	Modera	te		0	a di			
ti-spoofing		Restrict	ive		0	Z			
TP IPC/DW		Paranoi	d		0	13			
ntainment System P tachment Verdict stem		Ci Dome	opynght® 2006-201 Antispam name an	9 Comodo Secur d logo are tradem Release: 6.7	ty Solutions, Inc. / arks of Comodo S 9 5/060ec	All rights reserv Security Solutio	ed. ns. Inc.		

See the following sections for more details.

- SMTP IPS General Settings
- Whitelist IP Addresses
- Blocked IP Addresses
- Rate Control

5.5.1 SMTP IPS General Settings

- Click Modules > 'SMTP IPS/FW' > 'General' tab in the 'SMTP IPS/FW' screen.
- Enable/disable the intrusion prevention system (IPS) and configure a security profile for Secure Email Gateway.
- The IPS allows Secure Email Gateway to control the number of SMTP connections from any single IP address.
- This helps to detect and block spam/denial-of-service attacks and aids traffic management.

	T T				
eneral W	Vhitelist Blocked Rate Contr	ol		······	
Enable	SMTP IPS/FW (Intrusion Prevention) M	odule 🗹			
			Save		
Status	Security Profile	Activate	Edit		
	Permissive	S	i i i		
*	Moderate	O			
	Restrictive	O	i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i		

• SMTP IPS/FW (Intrusion Prevention) Module: Activate the module. The relevant settings specified in the security profile will now be applied.

The module has a set of predefined security profiles with different setting levels for each of the profile. The

IPS General Settings - Table of Column Descriptions					
Column Header	Description				
Status	Indicates whether the security profile is active.				
Security Profile	The profile determines how strict Secure Email Gateway should be regarding simultaneous connections from the same IP address.				
	Click the 'Edit' button to see the specific details of each profile. You are free to edit a profile as you wish.				
Activate	Enable the profile. Please note that only one security profile can be active at a time.				
Edit	Modify the settings of the profile.				

predefined profile can be edited as per the organization's requirement.

The interface allows you to:

- Activate a security profile
- Edit the parameters of a security profile

To activate a security profile

Click the Solution under the 'Activate' column in a security profile row that you want to enable. Please
note that only one security profile can be active at a time.

The 'Settings saved successfully' message will be displayed at the top.

To edit the parameters of a security profile

• Click the 🗹 button under the 'Edit' column in a security profile row that you want to edit.

The 'Edit IPS profile' screen will be displayed.

Edit IPS profile	Logout
Security profile	Permissive
Number of connections threshold to return SMTP 451 message	10
Number of connections threshold to block remote IP	100
Limit simultaneous connections	
Maximum number of simultaneous sessions from a single IP address	0
Limit the rate of new SMTP connections	
New SMTP connection interval (seconds)	0
New SMTP connection rate per interval	D
Save	Restore Defaults Cancel

IPS Profile - Table of Parameters					
Parameter	Description				
Security profile	The name of the predefined profile				
Number of connections threshold to return SMTP 451 message	 Max. connections before Secure Email Gateway will refuse further connections and send 451 errors messages to the sender. If you wish to unblock this sender, please contact domesupport@comodo.com to whitelist or unblock the IP. 				
Number of connections threshold to block remote IP	Max. connections before Secure Email Gateway firewall blocks the source IP address.				
Limit simultaneous connections	Enable controls on the number of simultaneous connections. See settings below.				
Maximum number of simultaneous sessions from a single IP address	Maximum number of sessions that can be opened by a single IP address after limiting instant SMTP connections.				
Limit the rate of new SMTP connections	If enabled, the parameters 'New SMTP connection interval' and 'New SMTP connection rate' can be specified to set limitations on new SMTP connections.				
New SMTP connection interval (seconds)	The time between a new connection and the previous connection.				
New SMTP connection rate per interval	Maximum number of new SMTP connections in specified interval.				

- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.
- Click the 'Restore Defaults' button to restore the parameters to factory setting.

5.5.2 Whitelist IP Addresses

- Click Modules > 'Whitelist' tab in the SMTP IPS/FW module.
- Whitelisted IP addresses will not be filtered by the SMTP IPS module.

		Choose Lang	guage 🗸 English 📕 Logou
SMTP IPS/FW			
General Whitelist Block	Rate Control		
Successfully Saved.			
IP or Network Address	Description	Action	
		(
100.12.125.15	test		
10.51.108.202/32	Example whitlist IP		
Export Import Delete all			

Whitelist Settings - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header		Description				
IP or Network Address	The details of endpoint IP/networked addresses that are whitelisted.					
Description	The descri	The description provided for the IP/Network address.				
Action		Allows you to add a Network or IP address after entering the details in the row.				
	R	Allows you to delete a whitelisted Network or IP address from the list.				

The interface allows administrators to:

- Add a network or IP address to whitelist
- Delete a whitelisted network or IP address from the list
- Export the whitelisted network or IP address details
- Import lists of whitelisted network or IP addresses from files

To add a network or IP address to whitelist

- Enter the IP or Network address details in the first field
- Enter an appropriate description for the address in the field under 'Description'.
- Click the
 button.

The address will be added and listed as whitelisted.

To delete a whitelisted network or IP address from the list

- Click the 🔯 button beside an address that you want to delete and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen
- Click 'Delete all' below to remove all the whitelisted addresses from the list and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.

To export the whitelisted network or IP address details

Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen



The list will be exported in .txt format.

To import lists of whitelisted network or IP addresses from files

· Click the 'Import' link at the bottom of the screen



Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'

Import		
🕂 Upload		
Save Close		

Repeat the process to add more files to the list.

port	
Upload	🗙 Clear All
C:\fakepath\SMTP IPS-Whitelist.txt Done	Clear
Save Close	

- To remove a file from the list, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the files, click 'Clear All' at the top.
- Click 'Save'.

5.5.3 Blocked IP Addresses

- Click Modules > 'Blocked' tab in the SMTP IPS/FW module.
- Add IP addresses to the blacklist so that mails from these sources never reach the SMTP level for processing.
- This page lists blocked by policy rules and IPs blocked by the intrusion prevention module.
- Admins can unblock IP addresses by simply deleting the row from the table.

		Choose Language 🗸	English	Logout
SMTP IPS/FW				
General Whitelist E	locked Rate Control			
User-defined block rules				
IP or Network Addres	s Description Action			
Th	ere are no available records.			
Export Import Delete all				
Addresses blocked by the a	pplication SMTP IPS sensor			
IP or Network Address	Description	Action		
104.168.146.219	Blocked at:2017.11.01-07.15.02 cause: Excessive unauthoriz	zed relay attempts 🛛 🙀		
	222 4 B 335			
Delete all				

The table at the top of the interface displays the details of the blocked IPs manually and the table below provides the details of IPs that were blocked automatically by SMTP IP sensor. The interface allows you to:

- Add a network or IP address to be blocked
- Delete a blocked network or IP address from the list
- Export the blocked network or IP address details
- Import lists of network or IP addresses from files to be blocked
- Delete an automatically blocked network or IP address by SMTP IPS sensor from the list

To add a network or IP address to be blocked

- · Enter the IP or Network address details in the first field
- Enter an appropriate description for the address in the field under 'Description'.
- Click the th button.

The address will be added and listed.

To delete a blocked network or IP address from the list

- Click the 🔯 button beside an address that you want to delete and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen
- Click the 'Delete all' button below to remove all the blocked addresses from the list and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.



Addresses blocked by the application SMTP IPS se

To export the blocked network or IP address details

- · Click the 'Export' link at the bottom of the screen
- The list will be exported as a text file.

To import lists of network or IP addresses from files to be blocked

• Click the 'Import' link at the bottom of the screen



• Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'

Import	
- Upload	
Save Close	

· Repeat the process to add more files to the list.

mport	
🕂 Upload	× Clear All
C:\fakepath\SMTP IPS-Blocklist.txt Done	Clear
Save Close	

- To remove a file from the list, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the files, click 'Clear All' at the top.
- · Click 'Save'.

To delete an automatically blocked network or IP address by SMTP IPS sensor from the list

If you know the IP addresses blocked by the SMTP IPS sensor is a trusted source, then you can delete it from the list.

• In the 'Addresses blocked by Secure Email Gateway SMTP IPS sensor' table, click the 😒 button beside

an address that you want to delete.

Addresses blocked by the application SMTP IPS sensor							
IP or Network Address	Description	Action					
104.168.146.219	Blocked at:2017.11.01-07.15.02 cause: Excessive unauthorized relay attempts						
Delete all							

Click 'OK' in the confirmation screen



5.5.4 Rate Control

- Click the 'Rate Control' tab in the SMTP IPS/FW module.
- The 'Rate Control' feature protects an organization from spammers that send huge amounts of mail to your mail server.
- It counts the number of suspicious mails sent by a source in a set period of time. If the value exceeds the specified threshold then the sender IP is added to the blacklist.

MTP IPS	/FW			Choose Language 🗸 English 📕 Lo
General White	ist B	Blocked Rate Control		
	Enable	Total Received E-Mail Number	Check interval (in hours)	Threshold (percentage)
SPAM	Ø	40	1	→ 50
LDAP		40	1	- 50
RELAY		50	1	- 50
CERTAINLY SPAM		40	1	- 50
VIRUS		40	1	- 20
	•		Save	

	Rate Control Settings - Table of Column Descriptions
Column Header	Description
Category	SPAM - Mails that are categorized as spam
	• LDAP - Verification of LDAP users. When incoming mails are for users that are not in LDAP, the originating IP address will be blacklisted. For example, if the number of mails is set as 50, and the threshold percentage as 50%, then if from a source if the number of mails for non LDAP users exceeds 25 within the check interval, then the source will be blacklisted
	 RELAY - IPs from which mails can be sent by users who are not available on the mail server.
	CERTAINLY SPAM - Mails that are categorized as definite spam.
	VIRUS - Mails that are categorized as with virus
Enable	Activate or disable the Rate Control for a mail category
Total Received Mails	The number of mails that need to be received in the specified interval before Secure Email Gateway will activate threshold checks.
	If Secure Email Gateway receives this number of mails from a source within the 'check interval' time, it will check what % of those mails are spam/relay/etc. If this exceeds the figure specified as the threshold then it will blacklist the sender.
Check interval (in hours)	Enter the time in hours for the specified number of mails to be checked for a category.
Threshold (percentage)	 Enter or use the slider to set the threshold percentage for the 'Rate Control' to be applied for a category.
	• For example, if the number of email is set as 60 for a category, then a 50% threshold means that when the number exceeds 30, then the originating IP address will be blocked.

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

5.6 Auto Whitelist

- Secure Email Gateway allows administrators to automatically whitelist incoming and outgoing mails to and from specific email addresses.
- The 'Auto Whitelist' module must be enabled to activate the whitelisting of addresses specified in profile settings. See 'Profile Management' section for more details about profile settings.

Auto Whitelist Settings:

• To open the 'Auto Whitelist' interface, click the 'Modules' tab on the left, then click 'Auto Whitelist'.

				Choose Language	v English	Logout
1	Auto \	Whitelist				
Γ	Settings	Auto Whitelist				
		Enable Autowhitelisting				
		Auto Whitelist Threshold	5			
		Auto Whitelist Maximum Day Count	31			
			s	ave		
L						

- Enable Autowhitelisting: Activate automatic whitelist checks on incoming and outgoing emails
- Auto Whitelist Threshold: How many emails must be exchanged before the remote sender is added to the whitelist. Note The threshold should be reached within the number of days specified in the 'Auto Whitelist Maximum Day Count' field.
- Auto Whitelist Maximum Day Count: To activate auto-whitelisting, Secure Email Gateway must receive the amount of mails in the threshold field within the number of days specified here.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Please note that you can manually whitelist emails from the 'Mail logs' interface.

Auto Whitelist details

•

The Auto Whitelist tab displays emails which have been whitelisted by currently active profiles.

			Choose Lan	iguage [·	 English 	Logout
Auto Whitelist						
Settings Auto Whitelist						
Search						
Local Address Remote Address	Last Messaging Time	Local Messaging Count	Remote Messaging Count	Action		
test@testcustomer.com test@example.com	24/07/2018 10:54:42	6	6	20		
	44 E	3 32				

	Auto Whitelist - Table of Column Headers
Column Header	Description
Local Address	The recipient's email address
Remote Address	The sender's email address
Last Messaging Time	The time of the most recent sent or received mail
Local Messaging Count	The number of mails received
Remote Messaging Count	The number of messages sent
Action	S Deletes auto-whitelisted items

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide | © 2020 Comodo Security Solutions Inc. | All rights reserved.

5.7 Containment System

- Containment protects users from zero-day malware by opening any untrusted attachments in a secure, virtual environment. This environment is known as the container.
- Items in the container are not allowed to access other processes or user data and will write to a virtual harddrive and registry. This isolation means the attachment cannot damage the host machine nor steal confidential information.
- Process in brief:
 - Secure Email Gateway checks the trust rating of all attachments. PDF and .exe attachments with a trust rating of 'Unknown' are removed and replaced with a link.
 - The link allows recipients to download a special version of the file wrapped in Comodo's containment technology.
 - The file will be open in a virtual container on the endpoint

To configure containment system,

Click the 'Modules' tab on the left, then click 'Containment System'.

			Choose Language 🗸 English Logout
(Containm	ient System	
٢	General Settings		
		Enable Containment System	
		Download Base Url	https://ip-18-194-134-
			Save

- Enable Containment System: When enabled, files that have an 'Unknown' trust rating are contained.
- **Download Base Url**: The URL from which users will download the wrapped version of the file.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

See Attachment Verdict System if you need more information on file ratings.

5.8 Data Leak Prevention (DLP)

- Click the 'Modules' > 'DLP'.
- Secure Email Gateway is integrated with a DLP (Data Leak Prevention) engine that prevents data theft via emails.
- The engine searches for configured words in incoming and outgoing mails and applies actions as per the settings in the profile. Actions include quarantining the mail and / or notifying the administrator.
- The DLP module must be enabled in order to activate the DLP parameters specified in the profile settings. See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.

	Choose Language V English
DLP	
DLP	
Enable DLP	
Incoming Profiles	
Outgoing Profiles	
	Save

- Enable DLP: Select the check box to display the 'Incoming Profiles' and 'Outgoing Profiles' check boxes.
- · Incoming Profiles: Select the check box to apply the DLP profile parameters to incoming mails
- **Outgoing Profile**: Select the check box to apply the DLP profile parameters for outgoing mails. This option is deselected by default.

See 'Profile Management' for more details about profile settings.

Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

5.9 Attachment Verdict System

- Click Modules > Attachment Verdict System.
- The 'Attachment Verdict System' settings area enables administrators to configure settings related to the analysis of email attachments.
- If enabled, the verdicting system will automatically submit email attachments (windows executable files and pdf files) with an 'unknown' trust rating to Comodo Valkyrie for analysis. Valkyrie will run a series of behavioral tests to find out whether or not the attachment is malicious.

		Choose Language V English
1	Attachment Verdict System	
ſ	General Settings	
	Enable Attachment Verdict System	
	CAM Key *	121f89a9-fb5e-4835-a
	Hostname *	valkyrie.comodo.com
		Save

	Attachment Verdict System - Table of Column Headers
Column Header	Description
Enable Attachment Verdict System	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway will automatically check the trust rating of Windows executables and pdf files in Comodo's file look up server (FLS). The verdict from the FLS can be 'Clean', 'Malware' or 'Unknown'. Clean attachments will be allowed to proceed while malware attachments will be automatically quarantined (providing 'Quarantine mails containing viruses' is enabled in the antivirus section of the profile). 'Unknown' files will be submitted to Comodo's real-time file analysis system, Valkyrie, for behavior testing. Valkyrie's tests will determine whether the unknown file is clean or malware and apply the appropriate action as mentioned above. This option is disabled

	by default.
САМ Кеу	Comodo Accounts Manager License key. The customers must sign up with Comodo Accounts Manager and order the Secure Email Gateway product to avail a license key.
Hostname	Hostname of the file attachment verdict system. This is set to the Comodo Valkyrie server by default. Only change this if you have established a different server with Comodo support.

Please note that, if the 'Enable Attachment Verdict System is enabled' and the 'Send files that not found in File Verdict System' in the **profile** is disabled, then the unknown files are not uploaded to Valkyrie for analysis. To view reports of attachment verdict system, see **Attachment Verdict Reports**.

6 Profile Management

- Click the 'Profile Management' tab on the left, then click 'Profiles'
- Profiles are a collection of settings for Secure Email Gateway features such as 'Anti-virus', 'Anti-spam', 'Black List' and White List'. Profile can be applied to domains and/or users.
- There are two kinds of profiles that can be created in Secure Email Gateway 'Incoming E-mail' and 'Outgoing E-mail'. Admins can apply different profiles for incoming mails and outgoing mails.
- Secure Email Gateway ships with a set of default incoming and outgoing profiles that can be edited but not deleted.

		offe Membership Search			Choose Language	English	Logout
► System							
+ SMTP	Profiles for user adm	in					
Modules	Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner			
Profile Management	Incoming E-mail	Default Incoming Profile	System default profile incoming mails	admin	K		
	Outgoing E-mail	Default Outgoing Profile	System default profile for outgoing mails	admin	1		
Profiles	Incoming E-mail	ilyaspala.ml_incoming		admin	3		
 Reports Quarantine & Archive 		Copyright© 2008-2019 Dome Antispam name and	Comodo Security Solutions. Inc. All rights reserv logo are trademarks of Comodo Security Solutio Release: 6.7.9.5t060ec	red. ns, linc.			

		Profiles - Table of Column Headers
Column Header		Description
Profile Type	Indicates v	vhether the type of rules defined is for incoming or outgoing mails.
Profile Name	The name	of the policy. The name of default policy will be auto filled.
Profile Description	A short de	scription provided for a mail security policy
Owner	The name	of the group to which the profile creator belongs
Action		Allows you to delete a profile. The default incoming or outgoing profile wil apply to the domains and / or users beloning to a profile when it is deleted.
	Ĩ	Allows you to edit the settings in a profile.

Search Option

Click the 'Profile Membership Search' link at the top to search for a profile that is applied to domain and / or users.

				E	Choo	se Languag	le 🗸	English	Logout
Profiles	•								
🔾 Add.profile 🛛 🥑	ofile Membership Search								
	Domain v	Search Clear							
Profiles for user adm	in								
Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner						
Incoming E-mail	Block Zip Links		admin		17				
Incoming E-mail	Default Incoming Profile	System default profile incoming mails	admin		13				
Outgoing E-mail	Default Outgoing Profile	System default profile for outgoing mails	admin		17				
Incoming E-mail	push		admin		X				
Outgoing E-mail	Sales Department		admin		X				
Incoming E-mail	stevenprofile		admin		X				
Incoming E-mail	test		admin		X				
Incoming E-mail	Test Incoming		admin		X				

• Select 'Domain' or 'User' from the drop-down for which you want to search the profile

Profiles			
Add profile Prof Profiles for user admin	Domain	Search Clear	
Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner
Incoming E-mail	Block Zip Links		admin 🙀 🏹

• Enter the domain or user details and click the the 'Search' button.

The profile applied for the entered details will be displayed.

Profiles	ofile Membership Search			
Profiles for user adm	Domain v mail.comodo	.com Search Clear		
Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner	
Incoming E-mail	Block Zip Links		admin	
Incoming E-mail	Default Incoming Profile	System default profile incoming mails	admin	

- To remove the details in the search field, click 'Clear'.
- To remove the search field, click the 'Profile Membership Search' link again.

The 'Profiles' interface allows administrators to:

- Add and Confgure a New Profile
- Edit a Profile
- Delete a Profile

6.1 Add and Configure a New Profile

- Click the 'Add profile' link in the 'Profiles' screen:
- Profiles let you configure how Secure Email Gateway's scanners and filters should handle mail on your protected domains.
- The items that can be set in a profile include Anti-virus, Anti-spam, SMTP, Attachment Filter, Black List, White List, Header Filter, Archive and Quarantine, Data Leak Prevention (DLP) and Realtime Blackhole List (RBL).

Profiles	ofile Membership Search			
	Domain 🗸	Search Clear		
Profiles for user adm	in			
Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner	
Incoming E-mail	Block Zip Links		admin	Ż
Incoming E-mail	Default Incoming Profile	System default profile incoming mails	admin	Ľ

The 'Add New Profile' screen will be displayed:

		Choose Langua	ge 🗸 English 📕 Logou
Add New Profile Parameters			
Members Anti-virus Anti-spam Black List	White List SMTP Settings	Attachment Filter	Header Filter
Archive And Quarantine Rules E-Mail Classificat	ion Geolocation Restrictions	RBL DLP	Containment System
Attachment Verdict System			
Profile Type *	Incoming E-mail 🗸		
Profile Name *			
Description			
Username*	admin 🗸		
Domain Members You can only select domains that are not member of any profile.	arda.com bilisim.ml gmail.com ilyas.com mydomain.com office365domain.com outlook.com	opy all uoy amova emove All	
E-mail Members You can enter any e-mail address here.	import		ž
	Save Cancel		
	Save <u>Cancer</u>		

Profiles - Table of Parameters								
Parameter	Description							
Profile Type	Select whether you want to apply rules to incoming mails or outgoing mails							
Profile Name	Enter a name for the customized policy you rule set create							
Description	Provide an appropriate description for the profile							
Username	Select the username of the person who is adding the profile. Only users with appropriate privileges will be listed.							
Domain Members	Allows administrators to add domains to the profile.							
	 The left-hand box displays domains that were added in the 'Manage Domains' section. 							
	Any domain that is already added to another profile will not be listed here.							

	 Select domains in the right-hand box then click 'Copy' to add them to the profile. All users which are members of imported domains will receive this profile. 					
Email Members	Allows administrators to add users to the profile.					
	 Incoming profiles - only users which belong to domains in the 'Manage Domains' section can be added. 					
	 Outgoing profiles - you can add users which belong to domains that are not in the 'Manage Domains' section. 					
Import	Allows you to add users to the profile by importing them from a saved file. The same limitations mentioned above apply to imported users.					

Click 'Save'

The profile will be saved and the tabs for configuring other parameters will be displayed.

Profiles									
Add profile Profile Membership Search									
	Domain 🗸	Search Clear							
Profiles for user adm	in								
Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner						
Incoming E-mail	Block Zip Links		admin						
Incoming E-mail	Default Incoming Profile	System default profile incoming mails	admin						

The interface allows administrators to configure profile parameters for:

- Anti-virus
- Anti-spam
- Black List
- White List
- SMTP Settings
- Attachment Filter
- Header Filter
- Archive and Quarantine
- Rules
- E-Mail Classification
- Geolocation Restrictions
- Realtime Blackhole List (RBL)
- Data Leak Prevention (DLP)
- Containment System

Attachment Verdict Syste	em
--------------------------	----

Note: All tabs are disabled until you complete and save the details of the domain members.

Anti-virus

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Anti-virus' tab

							Cho	ose Langu	age 🗸 English	Logo
dd Ne	ew Pro	file								
ample ir	ncoming	- Param	eters	_						
Members	Anti-virus	Anti-span	n Black List	Wh	ite List	SMTP Settings	Attach	ment Filter	r Header Filter	
Archive And	Quarantine	Rules	E-Mail Classificati	on	Geoloca	ation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	
Attachment	Verdict System	1								
Settings sa	wed successfi	ılly								
			Enable Anti Virus	\checkmark						
	Qu	arantine ma	ils containing virus							
Save C	Qu Cancel	arantine ma	ils containing virus							

- Enable Anti Virus: Select the check box to enable the anti-virus engine for this profile. Please note the 'Anti-virus' module should be enabled for this parameter to become active.
- Quarantine mails containing virus: Mails detected with viruses will be quarantined. Users can log into the 'Quarantine Webmail' interface to view his/her mails that are quarantined.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Anti-spam

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Anti-spam' tab

Vembers	Anti-virus	Anti-spa	m	Black List	White List	SMTP Settings	Attach	ment Filter	Header Filter	
Archive And	Quarantine	Rules	E-Ma	il Classificat	ion Geolo	cation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	
Attachment	Verdict System	n								
Settings s	aved successf	ully								
			Enab	ole Anti SPAM						
Use	a dedicated ba	ayesian data	abase f	or this profile						
Ма	ximum MB that	an e-mail e	nters s	pam filtering	1					
		Ce	ertainly	spam points	100					
				Spam points	50					
		Pro	obable	spam points	40					
		Ce	ertainly	spam action	Discard V					
			Certai	nly spam tag	[I] CERTAINLY SPA					
				Spam Action	Tag 🗸					
				Sparn tag	[!! SPAM]					
		Pro	obable	spam action	Tag 🗸					
			Probat	ble spam tag	I!! PROBABLE SPA					
Spam mailbox					spam@korumail.com					
Quarantine mails matching policies										
Quarantine Certainly SPAM Mails					\square					
Quarantine SPAM Mails					\checkmark					
Quarantine Probable SPAM Mails										

Profiles: Anti-spam Settings - Table of Parameters								
Parameter	Description							
Enable Anti SPAM	Select the check box to enable the anti-spam engine for this profile. Please note the 'Anti-spam' module should be enabled for this parameter to become active.							
Use a dedicated bayesian database for this profile	Select the check box to enable the anti-spam engine to use Bayesian database also for detecting spam mails. Please note the 'Bayes Spam engine' in the 'Advanced Settings' section of 'Anti-spam' module should be enabled for this parameter to become active.							
Maximum MB that an e- mail enters spam filtering	Enter the maximum size of emails for which spam filtering will be enabled. If the size of an email exceeds the entered value, then the email will not be scanned and placed in queue for delivery to the recipient.							
Certainly spam points	Enter a value between 1 and 100 that will classify an email as definitely spam. Suggested values are between 90 - 100 points.							
Spam points	Enter a value between 1 and 100 that will classify an email as spam. Suggested values are between 51 - 89 points.							
Probable spam points	Enter a value between 1 and 100 that will classify an email as probable spam. Suggested values are between 40 - 50 points.							
Certainly spam action	Select the action that has to be taken for emails that are categorized as definitely spam. The options available are:							

	• Tag - The email will be sent to the recipient with a tag as entered in the next field 'Certainly spam tag'
	 Forward - The mail will be forwarded to a mail box defined in the 'Spam mailbox' field
	 CC - The mail will be sent to the recipient and a copy will be sent to a mail box defined in the 'Spam mailbox' field
	• Discard - The mail will be quarantined. Daily notifications will be sent to user with details of quarantined emails. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
	• Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject command will be sent to the sender mail server.
Certainly spam tag	Enter the tag text for emails that are categorized as definitely spam
Spam Action	Select the action that has to be taken for emails that are categorized as spam. The options available are:
	 Tag - The email will be sent to the recipient with a tag as entered in the next field 'Spam tag'
	 Forward - The mail will be forwarded to a mail box defined in the 'Spam mailbox' field
	 CC - The mail will be sent to the recipient and a copy will be sent to a mail box defined in the 'Spam mailbox' field
	• Discard - The mail will be quarantined. Daily notifications will be sent to user with details of quarantined emails. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
	Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject command will be sent to the sender mail server.
Spam tag	Enter the tag text for emails that are categorized as spam
Probable spam action	Select the action that has to be taken for emails that are categorized as probable spam. The options available are:
	 Tag - The email will be sent to the recipient with a tag as entered in the next field 'Probable spam tag'
	 Forward - The mail will be forwarded to a mail box defined in the 'Spam mailbox' field
	• CC - The mail will be sent to the recipient and a copy will be sent to a mail box defined in the 'Spam mailbox' field
	 Discard - The mail will be quarantined. Daily notifications will be sent to user with details of quarantined emails. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
	• Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject command will be sent to the sender mail server.
Probable spam tag	Enter the tag text for emails that are categorized as probable spam
Spam mailbox	Enter the email address to which the forwarded and CCed spam emails configured in the 'Spam action' drop-down will be sent.
Quarantine mails matching policies	If enabled, emails that are matching the configured profile will be quarantined.

Quarantine Certainly SPAM Mails	If enabled, emails that are categorized as definitely spam will be quarantined.
Quarantine SPAM Mails	If enabled, emails that are categorized as spam will be quarantined.
Quarantine Probable SPAM Mails	If enabled, emails that are categorized as probable spam will be quarantined.

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Black List

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Black List' tab

			^				Cho	ose Langu	age 🗸 English	Logo
dd N	ew Pro	file								
ample i	ncoming	- Paran	neters							
Aembers	Anti-virus	Anti-spa	m Black List	w	hite List	SMTP Settings	Attack	hment Filter	r Header Filter	
Archive And	Quarantine	Rules	E-Mail Classific	ation	Geoloc	ation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	
ttachment	Verdict Syster	n								
Settings sa	aved successf	ully								
Blacklist	Туре	Blacklist V	/alue	Co	mment	Action				
IPv4 Addre	ess v 0	. 0 . 0	0.0							
		There are	no available re	cords						
Export Impo	ort Delete all	Cancel								

Profiles: Black List Settings - Table of Column Descriptions									
Column Header	Description								
Blacklist Type	 Select the type of source that has to be blacklisted. The options available are: IPv4 Address IPv6 Address E-mail Domain IPv4 Network IPv6 Network 								
Blacklist Value	Enter the details for the type of blacklist selected in the first column.								
Comment	Provide an appropriate description for the blacklisted source								
Action	Allows you to add a blacklist type after filling the fields in the row								

	Allows you to delete a blacklist type from the list

- To save the list of blacklisted sources, click the 'Export' link and save it to your system.
- To import a list of sources to be blacklisted, click the 'Import' link

Import	
🖶 Upload	
Save Close	

• Click the 'Upload' button, browse to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'.

The file will be added.

port	
- Upload	× Clear All
C:\ txt Done	<u>Clear</u>
Save Close	

- Repeat the process to add more files.
- To remove a file, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the added files, click 'Clear All' at the top right.
- To import the list from the files, click 'Save'.
- To delete a blacklist type from the list, click the button under the 'Action' column header and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.
- To remove all the blacklisted sources, click the 'Delete all' link and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.

White List

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- · Click the 'Whitelist' tab

					Cho	ose Langu	age 🗸 English	Logou
	ofile	tore						
Members Anti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List	White List	SMTP Settings	Attach	iment Filter	r Header Filter	
Archive And Quarantine	Rules	-Mail Classification	Geoloc	ation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	
Attachment Verdict Syst	em							
Whitelist Type	Whitelist Val	ue	omment	Action				
IPv4 Address 🗸	0.0.0	. 0		<u></u>				
IPv4 10.	51.108.202							
Export Import Delete all	Cancel							

Profiles: White List Settings - Table of Column Descriptions					
Column Header	ader Description				
Whitelist Type	 Select the type of source that has to be whitelisted. The options available are: IPv4 Address IPv6 Address E-mail Domain IPv4 Network IPv6 Network 				
Whitelist Value Enter the details for the type of whitelist selected in the first column.					
Comment	Provide an appropriate description for the blacklisted source				
Action	•	Allows you to add a whitelist type after filling the fields in the row			
	×	Allows you to delete a whitelist type from the list			

- To save the list of whitelisted sources, click the 'Export' link and save it to your system.
- To import a list of sources to be whitelisted, click the 'Import' link

Import					
🕂 Upload					
Save Close					

• Click 'Upload', browse to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'.

The file will be added.

nport	
🕂 Upload	× Clear All
C:\fakepath\IP_Whitelist.txt Done	Clear
Save Close	

- Repeat the process to add more files.
- To remove a file, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the added files, click 'Clear All' at the top right.
- To import the list from the files, click 'Save'.
- To delete a whitelist type from the list, click 🔯 under the 'Action' column header and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.
- To remove all the whitelisted sources, click the 'Delete all' link and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.

SMTP

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- · Click the 'SMTP Settings' tab

			Cho	ose Langu	age 🗸 English	Log		
Add New Profile ample incoming - Parameters								
Anti-virus Anti-spam Black List	White List	SMTP Settings	Attach	ment Filte	r Header Filter			
rchive And Quarantine Rules E-Mail Classificat	ion Geoloca	ation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System			
ttachment Verdict System								
Settings saved successfully								
Refuse mails sent by fake local users	\checkmark							
Require valid reverse DNS record								
Enable KoruMail Reputation Network® Blacklist Scan								
Enable KoruMail Reputation Network® Whitelist Scan	\checkmark							
Enable validation of MX records for incoming connections								
Enable greylisting								
Activate Layer-7 DoS protection	\checkmark							
Quarantine Anti-spoofing Mails								
Quarantine RBL-KRN Mails								
Anti-spoofing Action	Reject v							
KRN Action	Reject 🗸							
RBL Action	Reject 🗸							

Profiles: SMTP Settings - Table of Parameters						
Parameter	Description					
Refuse mails sent by fake local users	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway checks the 'From' details of an outgoing message with that of the added users and rejects if the users' details are not available.					
Require valid reverse DNS record	If enabled, the added domains should have a valid reverse DNS record for the mails to be processed and delivered					
Enable Korumail Reputation Network® Blacklist Scan	If enabled, mails are scanned for blacklist sources listed in the Korumail Reputation Network® (KRN) servers. Please note the KRN server setting should be enabled in the KRN module.					
Enable Korumail Reputation Network® whitelist Scan	If enabled, mails are scanned for whitelist sources listed in the Korumail Reputation Network® (KRN) servers. Please note the KRN server setting should be enabled in the KRN module.					
Enable validation of MX records for incoming connections	MX records maintain the entries of email server details to which the received emails for the protected domains are sent. If this check box is enabled, MX records for the protected will be checked and validated.					
Enable greylisting	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway creates a Greylist of source IP address/domains from where emails are sent to recipients protected by its filtering engine. Mails received from a source for the first time is rejected by Secure Email Gateway and sends a command to the source to resend the email. Generally, spammers do not resend emails. If the email is sent again from the source again, Secure Email Gateway accepts the mail and initiates the filtering process.					
Activate Layer-7 DoS	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway will activate the Layer 7 Denial of Service protection					
protection	feature.					
----------------------------------	--					
Quarantine Antispoofing Mails	If enabled, the spoofing mails will be Quarantined.					
Quarantine RBL-KRN Mails	If enables, the RBL and KRN mails will be Quarantined.					
Anti-spoofing Action	Select the action to be performed when the condition is met for a mail. The options available are:					
	Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject response will be sent to the sender's mail server					
	Discard – The mail will be rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.					
KRN Action	Select the action to be performed when the condition is met for a mail. The options available are:					
	Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject response will be sent to the sender's mail server					
	Discard – The mail will be rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.					
RBL Action	Select the action to be performed when the condition is met for a mail. The options available are:					
	Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject response will be sent to the sender's mail server					
	Discard – The mail will be rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.					

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Attachment Filter

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Attachment Filter' tab

Add New Profile

example incoming - Parameters

Members Anti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List V	Vhite List SMT	Settings	Attachr	ment Filter	Header Filter	
Archive And Quarantine	Rules E-	Mail Classification	Geolocation Re	strictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	
Attachment Verdict Syste	me							
Settings saved success	sfully							
Addition			Action					
		Te	A	128				
Malware	Equals	s to v Remo	/e Attachment 🗸					
Malware	There are no a	vailable records.	/e Attachment 🗸					

Logo

✓ English

Choose Language

Profiles: Attachment Filter Settings - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header	Description					
Addition	Enter the keyword that should be scanned for the attachments					
Condition	 Select the condition from the drop-down. The options available are: Contains Equals to Starts with Ends with 					
Action	 Select the action to be performed when the condition is met for an attachment in a mail. The options available are: Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject response will be sent to the sender's mail server. Discard - The mail will be quarantined. Daily notifications will be sent to user with details of quarantined emails. The user can view the email using the Quarantined Email web interface. Remove attachment - The mail will be delivered to the recipient without the attachment. 					
	Allows you to add an attachment filter rule after filling the fields in the row Image: Allows you to delete attachment filter rule from the list					

- To save the list of 'Attachment Filter' rules, click the 'Export' link and save it to your system
- To import a list of 'Attachment Filter' rules from a saved file, click the 'Import' link

Import	
🕂 Upload	
Save Close	

• Click the 'Upload' button, browse to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'.

nport	
4 Upload	🗙 Clear All
C:\fakepath\attachment filter.txt Done	Clear
Save Close	

The file will be added.

- Repeat the process to add more files.
- To remove a file, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the added files, click 'Clear All' at the top right.
- To import the list from the files, click 'Save'.
- To delete an 'Attachment Filter' rule from the list, click the 🔯 button under the last column and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.
- To remove all the 'Attachment Filter' rules, click the 'Delete all' link and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.

Header Filter

Click the 'Header Filter' tab

Add New Profile example incoming - Parameters

Mem	bers	Anti-virus	Anti-spa	m	Black List	Whit	te List	SMI	TP Settings	Attach	ment Filte	r -	Header Filter		
Arch	ive And	Quarantine	Rules	E-Mai	il Classificati	on	Geolocal	tion R	estrictions	RBL	DLP	Co	ontainment Syste	m	
Attac	chment	Verdict Syster	n												
	Header		Value		Тур	e	Actio	n	Action						
-Cł	100se-	-			Contains	~	Reject	~							
Sub	ject	Lottery			Contains		Reject								
Expo	rt Impo	rt Delete all	Cancel												

Profiles: Header Filter Settings - Table of Column Descriptions				
Column Header	Description			
Header	Select the header type that you want to add a 'Header Filter' rule for. The choices available are:			
	Subject Received			
	• To			

Choose Language V English

	• From				
Value	nter the keyword that should be scanned for the selected header type.				
Туре	 Select the condition from the drop-down. The options available are: Contains Equals to Starts with Ends with 				
Action	 Select the action to be performed when the condition is met for a 'Header Filter' rule in a mail. The options available are: Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject command will be sent to the sender mail server. 				
	 Discard - The mail will be quarantined. Daily notifications will be sent to user with details of quarantined emails. The user can view the email using the Quarantined Email web interface. 				
Action	Allows you to add a 'Header Filter' rule after filling the fields in the row				
	Allows you to delete a 'Header Filter' rule from the list				

- To save the list of 'Header Filter' rules, click the 'Export' link and save it to your system
- To import a list of 'Header Filter' rules from a saved file, click the 'Import' link

Import	
🕂 Upload	
Save Close	

• Click the 'Upload' button, browse to the location where the file is saved and click 'Open'.

The file will be added.

port	
- Upload	🗙 Clear All
C:\fakepath\header rules.txt Done	<u>Clear</u>
Save Close	

- Repeat the process to add more files.
- To remove a file, click the 'Clear' link beside it.
- To remove all the added files, click 'Clear All' at the top right.
- To import the list from the files, click 'Save' .
- To delete a 'Header Filter' rule from the list, click the 🔯 button under the last column and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.
- To remove all the 'Header Filter' rules, click the 'Delete all' link and click 'OK' in the confirmation screen.

Archive and Quarantine

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Archive and Quarantine' tab

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide Comodo Creating Trust Online.

mple incoming - Parameters				
embers Anti-virus Anti-spam Black List White List SMTP Settings	Attach	ment Filter	r Header Filter	
Chive And Quarantine Rules E-Mail Classification Geolocation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	WARNE
tachment Verdict System				
Archive method Forward V				
Archive mailbox backup@korumail.com				
Send daily quarantine report to recipients				
Quarantine release operation 🔽				
Archive Flags				
Mails with CLEAN content				
Mails with CERTAINLY SPAM content				
Mails with SPAM content				
Mails with PROBABLE SPAM content				
Mails matched by CONTENT FILTER rules				
Mails containing VIRUS				

Profiles: Archive and Quarantine Settings - Table of Parameters					
Parameter	Description				
Archive method	Select how the mails should be archived from the drop-down. The options available are:				
	None - The mails are not archived				
	 Forward - The mails are forwarded to the mail address entered in the next row 'Archive mailbox' 				
	Disk - The mails are stored in local disk				
	 Disk + Forward - The mails are stored in local disk and a copy is forwarded to the mail address entered in the next row 'Archive mailbox' 				
	Please note the archived and quarantined mails are removed from the disk as per the configuration done in the ' Quarantine & Archive Settings ' interface.				
Archive mailbox	This field becomes active only when an archive method is selected in the first row. Enter the mail address to which the archived and quarantined mails will be sent.				
Send daily quarantine report to recipients	If enabled, the users will receive daily reports of their quarantined mails. Users can view their quarantined mails in the 'Secure Email Gateway Quarantine Webmail' interface by clicking the 'Quarantine Webmail' link in the 'Login' screen.				
Quarantine Release Operation	Allows users to release their mails from quarantine				
Archive Flags					
Mails with CLEAN content	If enabled, mails that are categorized as safe will be archived as per the 'Archive				

	method' setting done in the first row.
Mails with CERTAINLY SPAM content	If enabled, mails that are categorized as 'Certainly Spam' will be archived as per the 'Archive method' setting done in the first row.
Mails with SPAM content	If enabled, mails that are categorized as 'Spam' will be archived as per the 'Archive method' setting done in the first row.
Mails with PROBABLE SPAM content	If enabled, mails that are categorized as 'Probable Spam' will be archived as per the 'Archive method' setting done in the first row.
Mails matched by CONTENT FILTER rules	If enabled, mails that are filtered for content per the settings done in 'Content Filter' in the 'Anti-spam' module will be archived as per the 'Archive method' setting done in the first row.
Mails containing VIRUS	If enabled, mails that are categorized are with virus will be archived as per the 'Archive method' setting done in the first row.

• Click the 'Save' button to apply your changes.

Rules

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Rules' tab

embers Anti-virus Anti-spam Black List Wi	hite List SMTP Settings	Attachment Fi	lter Header Filter
rchive And Quarantine Rules E-Mail Classification	Geolocation Restrictions	RBL DLF	Containment System
ttachment Verdict System			
PROMO			
Promotional Tag	[PROMO]		
Promotional Action	OK+TAG ▼		
Quarantine Promotional Mails	2		
SOCIAL			
Social Action	OK+TAC Y		
Social Tag	[SOCIAL]		
Quarantine social mails	2		
FORUM			
Forum Action	OK+TAG V		
Ouarantine forum mails			
NEWSLETTER			
Newsletter Action	OK+TAG ▼		
Newsletter Tag	[NEWSLETTER]		
Quarantine newsletter mails	2		
UPDATE			
Update Action	OK+TAG ▼		
Update Tag	[UPDATE]		
Quarantine update mails	2		
PHISHING			
Enable Phishing Check	2		
Phishing Action	Reject 🔻		
Phishing Tag	[PHISHING]		
Quarantine Phishing Mails	2		

	Rules Settings - Table of Parameters
Parameter	Description
PROMO	
Promotion Tag	Promotional emails are sent to the recipient with the tag as entered in this field.
Promotional Action	Select the action when the condition is met for a 'Rules' setting in a promotional mail. The options available are:
	 OK + TAG - The tagged mail is sent to the recipient.
	 OK – The mail is sent to the recipient without tag
	 Reject - The mail is rejected and a reject response us sent to the sender mail server.
	Discard - The mail is rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view

	the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
Quarantine Promotional Mails	If enabled, promotional mails are quarantined.
SOCIAL	
Social Action	Select the action when the condition is met for a 'Rules' setting in a social mail. The options available are:
	OK + TAG - The tagged mail is sent to the recipient.
	OK – The mail is sent to the recipient without tag
	 Reject - The mail is rejected and a reject response is sent to the sender mail server.
	• Discard - The mail is rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
Social Tag	Social emails are sent to the recipient with the a tag as entered in this field.
Quarantine social mails	If enabled, social mails are quarantined
FORUM	
Forum Action	Select the action when the condition is met for a 'Rules' setting in a forum mail. The options available are:
	OK + TAG - The tagged mail is sent to the recipient.
	 OK – The mail is sent to the recipient without tag
	 Reject - The mail is rejected and a reject response is sent to the sender mail server.
	• Discard - The mail is rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
Forum Tag	Forum based emails are sent to the recipient with the tag as entered in this field.
Quarantine forum mails	If enabled, forum mails are quarantined
NEWSLETTER	
Newsletter Action	Select the action when the condition is met for a 'Rules' setting in a newsletter mail. The options available are:
	OK + TAG - The tagged mail is sent to the recipient.
	 OK – The mail is sent to the recipient without tag
	 Reject - The mail is rejected and a reject response is sent to the sender mail server.
	• Discard - The mail is rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
Newsletter Tag	Newsletter emails are sent to the recipient with the tag as entered in this field.
Quarantine newsletter mails	If enabled, newsletter mails are quarantined
UPDATE	,
Update Action	Select the action when the condition is met for a 'Rules' setting in a update mail. The

	options available are:
	 OK + TAG - The tagged mail is sent to the recipient.
	 OK – The mail is sent to the recipient without tag
	 Reject - The mail is rejected and a reject response is sent to the sender mail server.
	• Discard - The mail is rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
Update Tag	Update emails are sent to the recipient with the tag as entered in this field.
Quarantine update mails	If enabled, update mails are quarantined
PHISHING	
Enable Phishing Check	If enabled, checks for phishing emails.
Phishing Action	Select the action when the condition is met for a 'Rules' setting in a phishing mail. The options available are:
	 OK + TAG - The tagged mail is sent to the recipient.
	 OK – The mail is sent to the recipient without tag
	 Reject - The mail is rejected and a reject response is sent to the sender mail server.
	• Discard - The mail is rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
Phishing Tag	Phishing emails are sent to the recipient with the a tag as entered in this field.
Quarantine Phishing Mails	If enabled, phishing mails are quarantined.

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Email Classification

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Email Classification' tab

Choose Language 🗸 English Logout

~

Ad	d	New	Profile

exami	ole i	incomi	ina -	Param	eters

lembers Anti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List W	hite List SMTP Settings	Attachment Filte	er Header Filter
Archive And Quarantine	Rules	Mail Classification	Geolocation Restrictions	RBL DLP	Containment System
Attachment Verdict System					
Settings saved successfu	illy				
Category	Status	Tag		Action	Quarantine
PROMO		PROMO		Discard 🗸	
SOCIAL	0	SOCIAL		Tag Only 🗸	
FORUM		FORUM		Tag Only 🗸	
NEWSLETTER		NEWSLETTER	ł	Tag Only 🗸	\boxtimes
UPDATE	0	UPDATE		Tag Only 🗸	
Save Concel					
Save Cancel					

Category	The type of mail received
Status	Whether the rule is enabled or not
Tag	The name prefixed to the email to show the email classification. For example, promotional email subjects are prefixed with [PROMO].
Action	Select the action to be performed when the condition is met for a 'Rules' setting in a forum mail. The options available are:
	• Discard - The mail will be rejected without notifying the sender. The user can view the email using the 'Quarantined Email' web interface.
	 TAG Only – The tagged mail will be sent to the recipient.
	 Reject - The mail will be rejected and a reject response will be sent to the sender mail server.
	OK – The mail will be sent to the recipient without tag
Quarantine	If enabled, the corresponding category of mails will be quarantined

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

Geolocation Restrictions

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Geolocation Restrictions' tab

								Cho	ose Langi	lage	English	Logout
4	Add N	ew Pro	file - Parame	ters								
	Members	Anti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List	Whi	ite List	SMTP Settin	gs Attac	hment Filte	er	Header Filter	
	Archive An	d Quarantine	Rules	E-Mail Classificat	ion	Geoloc	ation Restrictio	ns RBL	DLP	Con	tainment System	
	Attachmen	t Verdict System	n									
	Enable Ge	oLocation Restr	ictions 🔽									
		R	ejected Cou	intries			Action					
		Greece		~	/		(
		T	here are no	available recor	rds.							
	Afghanista	in										
	Greece											

Profile	s: Geolocat	ion Restrictions Settings - Table of Column Descriptions
Column Header		Description
Rejected Countries	Select the to enable \$	country you want Secure Email Gateway to reject. Please note that you have SMTP > General settings >
Action		Allows administrators to add a country after selecting it in the row
	×	Allows administrators to delete the country from the list

Realtime Blackhole List (RBL)

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'RBL' tab

						Cho	ose Langua	ige 🗸 English	Logo
dd New Pro	file								
mple incoming	- Paramete	ers							
embers Anti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List	White List	SMTP S	ettings	Attach	iment Filter	Header Filter	
chive And Quarantine	Rules E-I	Mail Classificatio	n Geoloca	tion Restr	rictions	RBL	DLP	Containment Syster	n
tachment Verdict System	n								
	President and a construction				an ta ta para sa ana ta p		ta di anna tha na ta ta ta		atan alast na tima
Server Host Address	Description		Туре	Enable	T First				
bl.spamcop.net	spamcop		RBL	Yes	TLIGT	T			
zen.spamhaus.org	spamhaus		RBL	Yes	▲ Up				
bl.score.senderscore.com	Return Path Re	eputation Network E	Blacklist RBL	Yes	- Down				
10.108.51.202			RBL	Yes	X Last				
psbl.surriel.com	Passive Spam	Block List	RBL	Yes	T LUOI				

The screen displays the RBL servers that are available by default and added manually. See 'Managing RBL Servers' for more details.

RBL Servers - Table of Column Descriptions			
Column Header	Description		
Server Host Address	The address of the RBL server.		
Description	The description provided at the time of adding the RBL server.		
Туре	The type of block list selected.		
Enable	Allows you to activate or deactivate a RBL server in the list. If a server is disabled, Secure Email Gateway skips it and refers to the next server in line.		

The control buttons next to the table allows to reorder the RBL server list for checking the blacklisted IP addresses available in the servers. The enabled RBL server listed first will be checked first and move down the order. Use the control buttons to move a server up or down the order.

Description	Туре	Enable	First
spamcop	RBL	Yes	a mar
spamhaus	RBL	Yes	🔺 Up
Return Path Reputation Network Blacklist	RBL	110	- Down
	RBL	Yes	
Passive Spam Block List	RBL	Yes	¥ Last
	Description spamcop spamhaus Return Path Reputation Network Blacklist Passive Spam Block List	Description Type spamcop RBL spamhaus RBL Return Path Reputation Network Blacklist RBL RBL RBL Passive Spam Block List RBL	Description Type Enable spamcop RBL Yes spamhaus RBL Yes Return Path Reputation Network Blacklist RBL Ho RBL Yes Passive Spam Block List RBL Yes

Data Leak Prevention (DLP)

The DLP feature is capable of scanning mails for important key words such as credit card, social security numbers, attachments and takes action as per the settings. Please note that the DLP module should be enabled for the settings configured here to take effect. See 'Data Leak Prevention' for more details.

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'DLP' tab

					Choo	ose Langu	age 🗸 English	Logo
Add New Prof	file - Paramet	ers						
Members Anti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List	White List	SMTP Settings	Attach	ment Filter	r Header Filter	308.0 1
Archive And Quarantine	Rules E-	Mail Classificatio	n Geoloc	ation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	
General Attachmen Settings saved succe	at List DLP	Body Filter						
		DLP Action	Reject 🗸					
	Enable	DLP Quarantine	\checkmark					

DLP General Settings

General	Attachment List	DLP Body Filter		
		DLP Action	Reject 🗸	
	I	Enable DLP Quarantine	Reject	
		Enable DLP Notify	Discard	
			No Action	

DLP Action - These settings determine what action should be taken if Secure Email Gateway detects a message that could present a data leak.

The options available are:

- No Action The mail will be allowed and the system admin will be notified if 'DLP Notify' is enabled.
- Reject The mail will be rejected and a reject warning will be sent to the sender's email address.
- **Discard** The mail will be deleted and if 'DLP Quarantine' is enabled, it will be quarantined and the system admin will be notified.
- Enable DLP Quarantine If selected, SEG quarantines mails with data leak. Please note the setting in 'DLP Action' should be 'Discard' for mails to be quarantined.
- Enable DLP Notify If selected, SEG alerts the system admin about DLP breaches.

Attachment List

Click the 'Attachment List' tab

Enable Attachment List	
Scan Archive Files	
able Attachment List	
Choose File Class	s Choose-
	File Types
	Add
File Class Name File	e Types Status
There are no available r	records.

- Enable Attachment List Select the check box to block emails with attachment file class defined below in the table.
- Scan Archive Files Select the check box to scan the attached zip files and block emails with attachment file class defined below in the table.

To add a file class

• Select the file class from the 'Choose File Class' drop-down

	Enable Attachment List
	Scan Archive Files 🔽
able Attachment List	
	Choose File Class Executables And Software Packages
	File Types
	Windows Portable Executables (EXE, DLL, SYS, SCR, OCX, DRV)
	Unix-like ELF Object Files
	Unix-like ELF Shared Libraries
	Unix-like ELF Executables
	Windows Installer (MSI)
	RPM Package Manager (RPM)
	Debian Software Package (DEB)

The file types for the selected file class will be displayed on the right side table.

• Select the file type or the check box above to select all the file types and click the 'Add' button beside it. The added file types for the selected file class will be displayed in the table below the first table.

	File Class Name	File Types	Status
	Executables And Software Packages	Debian Software Package (DEB)	Active
	Microsoft Office Files	Microsoft Word 2007+ Files	Active
	Executables And Software Packages	RPM Package Manager (RPM)	Active
De	elete		

- Clicking the link beside a file type under the 'Status' column header toggles the status between 'Active' and 'Passive'. 'Active' status indicates emails with attached file type will be blocked.
- To delete a file type from the list, select it and click the 'Delete' button. To delete all file types, select the check box beside 'File Class Name' column header and click the 'Delete button.

DLP Body Filter

The 'DLP Body Filter' feature searches the content of an email for sensitive information such as credit card details, email address and so on and take action as per the settings done in 'DLP Action'. Secure Email Gateway comes with three predefined DLP Body Filters and allows the administrators to add more filters as required.

neral A	ttachment List DLP Body Filter		
	Enable DLP Body Filter 🔽		
Policy			
Add			
Status	Enable DLP Body Filter	Action	
	Credit Card	S 👔 😣	
	Email Address	S 👔 😣	
	Turkish Identity Number	S 👔 😣	

Enable DLP Body Filter: Select the check box to apply the configured body filters

Profiles: DLP Body Filter Settings - Table of Column Descriptions			
Column Header	Description		
Status	Select the check box to enable the filter		

Enable DLP Body Filter	The name	of the filter
Action	<u>_</u>	Allows to view the details of the body filter
	ľ	Allows to edit a body filter
	×	Allows to delete a body filter

To add a new DLP body filter

.

Click the 'Add' button at the top of the table

Add				
Status	Enable DLP Body Filter		Action	
	Credit Card	<u>_</u>		
	Email Address	<u>_</u>		
	Turkish Identity Number	9	2	

The filter 'Pattern' screen will be displayed.

Pattern	X
Pattern Name :	
Regular Expression :	
Save Cancel	

- Pattern Name: Enter the name of the filter pattern
- Regular Expression: Enter the regular expression to define the search pattern. To know more about Regular Expression, refer to Wikipedia at http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regular_expression. You can also enter keywords in the field to search and block the email containing it.

To view the details of a pattern

- Click the \subseteq icon beside a body filter that you want to view the details

(^\\D)(4\d{3}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}] (\$\\D)(^\\D)(3[4,7]\d{2}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}] (\$\\D)(^\\D)(5[1-5]\d{2}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}](\$\\D) .::	attern Name :	Credit Card
	egular Expression :	(^ \D)(4\d{3}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}) (\$ \D) (^ \D)(3[4,7]\d{2}[-]?\d{6}[-]?\d{5}) (\$ \D) (^ \D)(5[1-5]\d{2}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4})(\$ \D)

Click the 'Cancel' button or close the dialog to return to main screen.

To edit a body filter

Click the icon beside a body filter that you want to edit the details

Pattern		×
Pattern Name :	Credit Card (^\D)(4\d{3}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4})	
Regular Expression :	(\$\D)(^\D)(3[4,7]\d{2}[-]?\d{6}[-]?\d{5}) (\$\D)(^\D)(5[1-5]\d{2}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4}[-]?\d{4})(\$\D)	
Save Cancel		

· Edit the details as required and click the 'Save' button

To delete a body filter

Click the 🔯 icon beside a body filter that you want to delete

Are you sure you want to c	delete this entry?
ОК	Cancel

Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

Containment System

•

The 'Containment System' enables administrators to configure profile settings related to the containment analysis. If enabled, containment system will run email attachments in` the containment environment (windows executable files and pdf files).

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right

Click the 'Containment System' tab

٠

Edit profil	dit profile: TechWriting											
Members Ant	ti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List	List White List SMTP Settings Attachment Filter Header Filter								
Archive And Qua	rantine	Rules	E-Mail Classificat	ion Geol	ocation Restrictions	ions RBL DLP Containment System						
Attachment Verdi	Attachment Verdict System											
Enable Containment System												
Files which are accepted. • 🔲 windows executable 💷 pdf												
Apply for whitelists												
Only Administrator can unwrap 🗐												
Unwrap the sandbox after specified time (mins)												
Unwrap	Unwrap the sandbox after specified running count					t 2 10 2						
					Save							

	Containment System - Table of Column Headers						
Column Header	Description						
Enable Containment System	If enabled, email attachments (pdfs and windows executables) will be 'wrapped' with containment code before delivery. This means they will open in an isolated, virtual environment known as the container, instead of directly on the endpoint. The attachment will open as normal from the end-user's point-of-view, but it will not be allowed to access important system files, user data or to cause damage to the host system.						
Files which are accepted	If enabled, will deliver files in the chosen format						
Apply for whitelists	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway will also analyze white-listed sources.						
Only Administrator can unwrap	Safe files in the containment when run are unwrapped immediately for both users and admins. Malicious files are blocked.						
	Contained files for which results are unsure (not safe nor malicious) are unwrapped if specified time or count (mentioned in rows below) is reached.						
	If this setting is:						
	 Enabled - Only admins can unwrap contained files for which results are unsure (not safe nor malicious) 						
	 Disabled – Both admins and users can unwrap contained files for which results are unsure (not safe nor malicious) 						
Unwrap the sandbox after specified time (mins)	Unsure files (not safe nor malicious) when run are moved out of containment after the specified time. Move the slider to set the time.						
Unwrap the sandbox after specified running count	Unsure files (not safe nor malicious) when opened 'X' times as specified here are moved out of containment. Move the slider to set the count.						

Attachment Verdict System

The 'Attachment Verdict System' settings area enables administrators to configure settings related to the analysis of email attachments. If enabled, the verdicting system will automatically submit email attachments (windows executable files and pdf files) with an 'unknown' trust rating to Comodo Valkyrie for analysis. Valkyrie will run a series of behavioral tests to find out whether or not the attachment is malicious.

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- · Locate the profile you want to work on and click the 'Edit' button on the right
- Click the 'Attachment Verdict System' tab

			Cho	ose Langua	oge 🗸 English	Logo
Add New Profile ample incoming - Parameters						
Members Anti-virus Anti-spam Black List	White List	SMTP Settings	Attach	ment Filter	Header Filter	
Archive And Quarantine Rules E-Mail Classificat	ion Geoloc	ation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment System	ę .
Attachment Verdict System						
Settings saved successfully						
Enable Attachment Verdict System						
Malware Probability Value *	0	100	<u>a</u>			
Apply for whitelists						
Send files that not found in File Verdict System						
Auto submission in-queue waiting time *	15 • s	300				
	Sa	ve				

	Attachment Verdict System - Table of Column Headers
Column Header	Description
Enable Attachment Verdict System	 If enabled, Secure Email Gateway will automatically check the trust rating of Windows executables and pdf files in Comodo's file look up server (FLS). The verdict from the FLS can be 'Clean', 'Malware' or 'Unknown'.
	• Clean attachments will be allowed to proceed while malware attachments will be automatically quarantined (providing 'Quarantine mails containing viruses' is enabled in the antivirus section of the profile).
	 'Unknown' files will be submitted to Comodo's real-time file analysis system, Valkyrie, for behavior testing.
	• Valkyrie's tests will determine whether the unknown file is clean or malware and apply the appropriate action as mentioned above.
Malware Probability Value	The threshold at which Secure Email Gateway will designate an unknown file as 'malware' based on Valkyrie results. Comodo recommend that administrators leave this setting at the default and only move it after consultation with Comodo support.
	 Valkyrie examines the behavior of unknown files and assigns a score indicating how likely it is that the file is malware. Under the default settings, a score of 46+ is classed as malware.
	 Raising the value in this slider means Secure Email Gateway is more tolerant/less likely to class attachments as malware.
Apply for whitelists	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway will also analyze white-listed sources.
Send files that not found in	If enabled, Secure Email Gateway will upload files rated 'Unknown', to the attachment

File Verdict System	verdict system for detailed behavior analysis
Auto-submission in queue waiting time	Define in seconds how long Secure Email Gateway should wait before the submission times-out.

Please note that, if the 'Enable Attachment Verdict System' is enabled and the 'Send files that not found in File Verdict System' is disabled, then the unknown files are not uploaded to Valkyrie for analysis. See **Attachment Verdict Reports**, to view reports of attachment verdict system.

6.1.1 Edit a Profile

- Click 'Profile Management' > 'Profiles'
- Click the icon beside a profile in the 'Profiles' screen that you want to edit the details

				E	Choose Lang	guage	 Englis 	h	Log
Profiles									
Add profile Pr	ofile Membership Search								
In files for user adm	in the second								
One Cla Trans	Des Gla Marra	Der Ele Deservición	0						
Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner	D.	~				
Incoming E-mail	Block Zip Links		admin	X					
Incoming E-mail	Default Incoming Profile	System default profile incoming mails	admin		3				
Outgoing E-mail	Default Outgoing Profile	System default profile for outgoing mails	admin		1				
Incoming E-mail	example incoming	Incoming	admin	2	0				
Incoming E-mail	push		admin		1 Alexandre				
Outgoing E-mail	Sales Department		admin		2				
Incoming E-mail	stevenprofile		admin		2				
Incoming E-mail	test		admin		X				
Incoming E-mail	Test Incoming		admin	2	3				

The 'Edit Profile' screen will be displayed.

						Choo	se Langua	ge 🗸 English	Logout			
Edit p	rofile: e	xample	incom	ina								
						Tana		Lucia				
Members	Anti-virus	Anti-spam	Black List	White List	SMTP Settings	Attachin	nent Filter	Header Filter				
Archive And	dQuarantine	Rules E	-Mail Classificat	ion Geoloc	ation Restrictions	RBL	DLP	Containment Syst	em			
Attachmen	t Verdict Syster	n				iyayaa ya ya						
			Profile Type *	Incoming E-m	nail 🗸							
			Profile Name*	example incoming								
	Description				Incoming							
	Username*				admin v							
You can d	Domain Members You can only select domains that are not member of any profile.				om H	H Copy all Copy Remove Remove All	arda.co office38 outlook	im 65domain.com .com				
	You can	l enter any e-ma	E-mail Members iil address here.	example@ard example@offic test@outlook.c	a.com ce365domain.com com							
				Cours	Concel							
				Save	Cancel							

 Edit the parameters as required. The procedure is similar to adding a new profile. See 'Adding and Configuring a New Profile' for more details.

6.1.2 Delete a Profile

• Click the 🔯 icon beside a profile in the 'Profiles' screen that you want to delete from the list.

					Choose Languag	e 🗸 English	Logout
Profiles							
Add profile Pr	ofile Membership Search						
Profiles for user adm	in						
Profile Type	Profile Name	Profile Description	Owner				
Incoming E-mail	Block Zip Links		admin		2		
Incoming E-mail	Default Incoming Profile	System default profile incoming mails	admin		a		
Outgoing E-mail	Default Outgoing Profile	System default profile for outgoing mails	admin		1		
Incoming E-mail	example incoming	Incoming	admin	G	8		
Incoming E-mail	push		admin		1		
Outgoing E-mail	Sales Department		admin		2		
Incoming E-mail	stevenprofile		admin		X		
Incoming E-mail	test		admin		8		
Incoming E-mail	Test Incoming		admin	2	8		

• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

Are you sure you want to d	lelete this entry?
ок	Cancel

Please note if an incoming or outgoing profile is deleted, the respective default profile will apply for the domains and users.

7 Reports

- The 'Reports' section in Secure Email Gateway provides comprehensive details of all mails for protected domains that were routed via Secure Email Gateway.
- The section is divided into six subsections, Mail Logs, SMTP Queue, Delivery Logs, SMTP-AUTH Logs, Summary Reports, Domain Reports and Attachment Verdict Reports.
- Each section provides a detailed report of each item, for example, the 'Mail Logs' section displays the details of mails that are categorized as Spam, Blacklisted and so on.

Mail Logs	;									
Butject 0	Sender	E Recipier	в 🗄 іР	Search	Clear	Advanced search			Last Day) Last Month 🗇 Last 2 Months 🛞 Last 3 Months 🛞 Last 6 Months 🛞 All Times
Action		EQUALS	OELAYED	•						
							Search	Clea	•	
Actions • D	м									First Previous Page1 / 1 250 T Records per page Next Last
Delivery + +	iubject e	Result #	Received •	Ser	ider e	Recipient(s) +	17 e		Action =	Details •
2		RLY ERR.	27/12/2019-04/59-1	5 spamer	(Discals)	spameri@tiscal.it	45.143.222.167		0	Relay error: Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Missing SMTP AUTH configuration
Actions • Do	k									First Previous Page 1 / 1 250 • Records per page Next Last

See the following sections for more details:

- Mail Logs Report
- SMTP Queue Report
- Delivery Logs Report
- SMTP-AUTH Logs Report
- Summary Report
- Domain Report
- Attachment Verdict Reports
- Original Mail Request

7.1 Mail Logs Report

- · Click 'Reports' and then click 'Mail Logs'
- The 'Mail Logs' report provides complete details of incoming and outgoing mails for all domains that have been added to Secure Email Gateway.
- The logs show the subject of the mail, date and time received by Secure Email Gateway, the result of the filtering process and more.

Mail Logs									
🗊 Subject 🗊 Sender	E Respe	nts 🗇 IP	Search	Clear	Advanced search		٠	Last Day) Last Month 🖗 Last 2 Months 🛞 Last 3 Months 🖗 Last 8 Months 🛞 All Times
Action	▼ EQUALS	 DELAYED 	•						
						Search	Clea	r)	
Actions • Dol									First Previous Page1 / 1 250 T Records per page Next Last
Delivery + + Subject +	Result #	Received •	Sen	der e	Recipient(s) +	17 e		Action =	Details +
2	RLY ERR.	27/12/2019 04:59-1	5 spameri	() filoscals R	spameri@tiscali.it	45.143.222.167		0	Relay error: Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Missing SMTP AUTH configuration
Actions • Dol									First Previous Page1 / 1 250 * Records per page No.1 Last

	Mail Logs Report - Table of Column Descriptions
Column Header	Description
Delivery	Indicates the status of mail delivery. The statuses are: Success Temporary Error Permanent Error
Icon	The arrow icon indicates whether the mail is incoming or outoing
Subject	The content of the email subject line.
Result	The verdict on an email after filtering. For example, 'CSPAM' means Secure Email Gateway found the mail was 'Certainly Spam'.
Received	Date and time Secure Email Gateway received the email.
Sender	Email address information of the originator
Recipient(s)	Domain name of the receiver
IP	The network address of the system from where the mail was sent. The next column displays the flag of the originating country.
Action	Status of the mail after filtering. Place your mouse over an icon to view a description of the action.
	- Relayed: The mail successfully passed the filtering process and was passed onto the target mail server.
	I Rejected: The mail was not accepted by Secure Email Gateway. A rejection message was sent to the sender.
	Oiscarded: Quarantined mail
	Delayed: Indicates the source is greylisted.
Details	Reason why a particular action was taken on a mail. For example, why it was rejected, delayed etc.

At the top and bottom of the screen, you have the option to set the number of records to be displayed per page and export the report in CSV format.

To configure the number of records to be displayed per page

Click the 'Records per page' drop-down

······································		First	Previous Page1 / 2	250 🗸 R	ecords per page Next Last
ecipient(s) ę	IP ÷	÷		10 25	Details 🛊
ri@tiscali.it	204.188.205.187		Relay error: Recipient domai	25	the managed domains or Miss
i@tiscali.it	89.197.1.54		Relay error: Recipient domai	50	the managed domains or Miss
@tiscali.it	192.110.157.9		Relay error: Recipient domai	100	the managed domains or Miss
stcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	04	Classified as probable spam	250	.0
stcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	64	Classified as probable spam	Score: 45	5.0
stcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	04	Classified as probable spam	Score: 45	5.0
stcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	64	Classified as probable spam	Score: 45	5.0
stcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	C*	Classified as probable spam	Score: 45	5.0
in stamps com	212 14 70 194	.C+	Classified as probable spam	Scoros 45	5.0

- Select the number of records per page to be displayed from the options.
- Click the 'First', 'Previous', 'Next' and 'Last' buttons to navigate to the respective pages.

To export the report to a CSV file

Click the 'Actions' drop-down

	-				Search	Clear
Subject	Sender	Rec	cipients	P		
· · · · ·						
Actions 🗸 🗸	Do!					
Actions	Do! Subject ¢		Result e	Receive	ed 🔶	
Actions Actions Save As CSV	Do! Subject ¢		Result ÷	Receive 25/07/2018	ed ¢ 03:05:51	spameri@
Actions Actions Save As CSV	Do! Subject ÷		Result ÷ RLY ERR RLY ERR	Receive 25/07/2018 25/07/2018	ed ¢ 03:05:51 02:50:18	spameri@ spameri@

Select 'Save As CSV' and click the 'Do!' button



• Download and save the report to your system.

Search Options

You can search for a particular record or records in the report by using simple or advanced search feature.

- Simple Search
- Advanced Search

Simple Search

The simple search options allows you to search for a particular record or records based on 'Subject', 'Sender', 'Recipients' and / or 'IP' details only.

N	lai	il Logs	cinients	Search	Clear Advanced search	
Sa	ve As	SCSV V Do!				
\$	¢	Subject \$	Result 🛊	Received +	Sender 🛊	Re
Ø	Ð		RLY ERR	25/07/2018 03:05:51	spameri@tiscali.it	spameri@
Ø	¢.		RLY ERR	25/07/2018 02:50:18	spameri@tiscali.it	spameri@
Ø	¢.		RLY ERR	24/07/2018 22:27:14	spameri@tiscali.it	spameri@
V		[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM	24/07/2018 10:57:12	test@korumail.tk	

- To search for records based on the entries under 'Subject', 'Sender', 'Recipients' and / or 'IP' columns, enter the text or number fully or partially in the field and click the 'Search' button
- To search for records based on the entries under a particular column or columns, select the respective check boxes, enter the text or number fully or partially in the field and click the the 'Search' button. For example, if you want to search for a particular record for sender and recipients, select the 'Sender' and 'Recipients' check boxes, enter the text fully or partially in the field and click the 'Search' button.

Advanced Search

The 'Advanced Search' option allows you a more granular search by including rules and filters.

• Click the 'Advanced Search' link at the top of the screen.

_			_	Search Clear Advanced	search
	ibject 🗌 Send	der 🗌	Recipients IP		
Subje	ct	~ (CONTAINS V	+)	
-		1)
					Sear
-					
Save A	s CSV 🗸 Do!				
Save A	s CSV ↓ Do! Subject	Result	Received	Sender	Recipient(s)
Save A	Subject	Result OK	Received 21.04.2017 10:13:30	Sender korumail@ip-172-31-22-243	Recipient(s) admin@example.com
Save A	SCSV J Do! Subject License Renewal License Renewal	Result OK OK	Received 21.04.2017 10:13:30 21.04.2017 08:43:56	Sender korumail@ip-172-31-22-243 korumail@ip-172-31-22-243	Recipient(s) admin@example.com admin@example.com
Save A	Subject License Renewal License Renewal License Renewal	Result OK OK OK	Received 21.04.2017 10:13:30 21.04.2017 08:43:56 21.04.2017 06:14:09	Sender korumail@ip-172-31-22-243 korumail@ip-172-31-22-243 korumail@ip-172-31-22-243	Recipient(s) admin@example.com admin@example.com admin@example.com
Save A	Subject Subject License Renewal License Renewal License Renewal License Renewal	Result ОК ОК ОК ОК	Received 21.04.2017 10:13:30 21.04.2017 08:43:56 21.04.2017 06:14:09 21.04.2017 05:55:36	Sender korumail@ip-172-31-22-243 korumail@ip-172-31-22-243 korumail@ip-172-31-22-243	Recipient(s) admin@example.com admin@example.com admin@example.com

The 'Advanced Search' option will be displayed.

inan Log	19		Cascab	Clear		
Subject [Sender Recipie	ents 🗌 IP	Search	Clear	Advanced search	
ubject	~ CONTAINS	~		>		

The first drop-down contains the column headers that can be selected for an advanced search.

			Search	Clear Advanced search
Subject Sender	Re	ecipients	IP	
Subject		NS V		+
Subject				
From Address				
To Address				
Remote IP				
Remote IP Action		Result 🔶	Received +	Sender +
Remote IP Action Result		Result \$	Received \$ 25/07/2018 03:05:51	Sender ÷ spameri@tiscali.it
Remote IP Action Result Received		Result +	Received \$ 25/07/2018 03:05:51 25/07/2018 02:50:18	Sender \$ spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it
Remote IP Action Result Received		Result ♦ RLY ERR RLY ERR RLY ERR	Received \$ 25/07/2018 03:05:51 25/07/2018 02:50:18 24/07/2018 22:27:14	Sender ¢ spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it
Remote IP Action Result Received Incoming Mail/Outgoing Mail		Result + RLY ERR RLY ERR RLY ERR PSPAM	Received \$ 25/07/2018 03:05:51 25/07/2018 02:50:18 24/07/2018 22:27:14 24/07/2018 10:57:12	Sender ÷ spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it test@korumail.tk
Remote IP Action Result Received Incoming Mail/Outgoing Mail		Result + RLY ERR RLY ERR RLY ERR PSPAM PSPAM	Received \$ 25/07/2018 03:05:51 25/07/2018 02:50:18 24/07/2018 22:27:14 24/07/2018 10:57:12 24/07/2018 10:57:10	Sender ¢ spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it test@korumail.tk test@korumail.tk
Remote IP Action Result Received Incoming Mail/Outgoing Mail	ncoming Li	Result + RLY ERR RLY ERR RLY ERR PSPAM PSPAM PSPAM	Received \$ 25/07/2018 03:05:51 25/07/2018 02:50:18 24/07/2018 22:27:14 24/07/2018 10:57:10 24/07/2018 10:57:10 24/07/2018 10:57:09	Sender ÷ spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it spameri@tiscali.it test@korumail.tk test@korumail.tk test@korumail.tk

The second column contains the condition for a search, which depends on the item selected in the first column and text/number entered or options selected in the third column.

Subject Sender	Recipients	Search	Clear Advanced search	
Subject	CONTAINS	/	+	
	EQUALS NOTEQUALS			Search
Save As CSV Dol	CONTAINS			
Save As CSV V DO.	NOTCONTAINS			
♦ ♦ Subject ♦	Result +	Received +	Sender +	
🤣 🔄	RLY ERR	25/07/2018 03:05:51	spameri@tiscali.it	spame
			and a state of the	
🥝 🖯	RLY ERR	25/07/2018 02:50:18	spameri@tiscall.it	spame
ଡ ଼ ବା ଡ ବା	RLY ERR RLY ERR	25/07/2018 02:50:18	spameri@tiscali.it	spame spame

The third column allows you to enter the text/number or select from the options depending on the selection in the first column. For example, choosing 'Subject', 'From Address' or 'Remote IP' allows you to enter the text in the third column.

Mall Lo	gs					
				Search	Clear	Advanced search
Subject	Sender	Recipien	ts 🗌 IP			
Subject			Important		+	

If you select 'Action' or 'Result' in the first column, then further options can be selected from the third column.

		1		Clear	Advanced search		
Action		UALS V	DELAYED V	•			
			DELAYED DISCARDED			Search	Clear
Save As CSV	Do!	Pocult -	REJECTED		Sondor		0
୦ ଚା	Subject •	RUY ERR	25/07/2018 03:0	5:51 spameri@	tiscali.it	5	pameri@t
ଚ ଚା		RLY ERR	25/07/2018 02:5	0:18 spamerið	Dtiscali.it Nicestii	S	

If you select 'Received' in the first column, then you can enter a date or select from the calendar.

								Searc	h) (Clea	r Z	Advanced search	
	Sub	oject 🗌 Sender 🗌 Re	ecipients			IP							
Rece	ive	d v EQUALS	3 ~				(+				
				~~		Ju	ly, 20	018	>	>>	x		Searc
					Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	ļ	(
Save	As	s CSV 🗸 Do!		27	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		
		Subject A	Pocult o	28	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	Sondor	
	÷ ⊼∎	Subject o		29	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	senuer e	
0 E	2		RLY ERR	30	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	icali.it	
Õ	2		RLY ERR	31	29	30	31	1	2	3	4	icali.it	
<</td <td>0</td> <td>[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li</td> <td>PSPAM</td> <td>32</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> <td>7</td> <td>8</td> <td>9</td> <td>10</td> <td>(11)</td> <td>ail.tk</td> <td></td>	0	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM	32	5	6	7	8	9	10	(11)	ail.tk	
🔶 🗧	>]	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM							Т	dav	ail.tk	
1)]	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM	2	1011	2010	. 10		, re	suger	orun	ail.tk	
🔶 🗧)]	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM	24	4/07/	2018	3 10:	57:0	7 te	st@k	orun	nail.tk	
🔶 🗧)	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM	24	4/07/	2018	3 10:	57:0	5 te	st@k	orun	nail.tk	
1	ା	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM	24	4/07/	2018	3 10:	57:0	3 te	st@k	orun	nail.tk	
🥜 👌	oll	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAM	24	4/07/	2018	3 10:	57:0	2 te	st@k	orun	nail.tk	

You can add more filters by clicking _____ for narrowing down your search.

		Search Clear Advanced search	
Su	bject 🗌 Sender	Recipients IP	
	Received	V EQUALS V	
AND 🕔	From Address	V NOTEQUALS V	
OR 🕔	/ To Address	✓ CONTAINS ✓	
AND 5	Remote IP	V EQUALS V	
AND 🕔	Action		
AND 🕔	Result	V EQUALS V ANTISPOOFING REJECT V	
	Dessived		

You can remove a filter by clicking the

button beside it.

You can create a filter rule by selecting 'AND' or 'OR' option beside each of the added filter.

- Click 'Clear' to remove the advanced search rules.
- Click 'Search' to start the search per the filter rule.

The items will be searched for in the ascending order and results displayed.

• To remove the advanced search field, click the 'Advanced search' link again.

Administrators can filter results on monthly basis. The filters available are 'Last Month', 'Last 2 Months', 'Last 3 Months', 'Last 6 Months' and 'All Times'.

Details of a Log Entry

• Clicking anywhere on the row of a log record will display the details of the mail log.

Mail Logs	×						
	4						
Received	25/07/2018 02:50:18						
Queue ID	19759-1532487018-533437						
Message ID							
Action	0						
Result	RELAY ERROR						
Score	0.0						
Sender	spameri@tiscali.it 🛛 Add Email In Black List 🔍 🔄						
Recipient(s)	spameri@tiscali.t						
RFC2822 Sender							
RFC2822 Recipient(s)							
Subject							
IP	89.197.1.54 Add Black List 🗸 🔮						
Location	London, England, United Kingdom						
Size	0						
Matched Profile	Default Incoming Profile (defined by user: admin)						
Details	Relay error: Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Missing SMTP AUTH configuration						
Relayed	No						
Close							

The details screen allows you to mark the mail log as 'Spam' or 'Not spam' depending the mail category. You can also add the sender, sending domain and IP to blacklist or whitelist.

• To mark an email as 'Spam' or 'Not spam', click the relevant button at the bottom of the screen.

The changes will be saved and mails from the sender will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

• To add the sender or domain to blacklist/whitelist, click the drop-down in the 'Sender' row.

Sender	spameri@tiscali.it 🛛 Add Email In Black List 🗸 🔰
Recipient(s)	spameri@tiscali.it
RFC2822 Sender	
RFC2822 Recipient(s)	
Subject	

• Select the category from the options that you want to add the email and click the 🖻 button beside it.

Descript	ion		
		.::	
Save	Close		

• Enter the reason for changing the category and click the 'Save' button.

The changes will be saved and mails from the sender will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

• To add the originating IP to blacklist/whitelist, click the drop-down in the 'IP' row.

RFC2822 Recipient(s)	ana alay sana ay kana ana ana ang sarang sarang sana yang sana ang sang sa sang sa sang sang s	
Subject		
IP	192.110.157.9 Add Black Li	
Location	Graham, Washin Add Black List	
Size	o Add White List	
Matched Profile	Default Incoming Profile (defined by user: admin)	
Details	Relay error: Recipient domain is not in the managed domains or Missi	ng SMTP AUTH configur

Select the category from the options that you want to add the IP and click the 🛄 button beside it.

IP Description	
Save Close	

• Enter the reason for changing the category and click the 'Save' button.

The changes will be saved and mails from the IP will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

You can view the previous or next record by click the < Implementation buttons at the top of a details screen.

7.2 SMTP Queue Report

- Click 'Reports' > 'SMTP Queue'.
- The 'SMTP Queue' report shows details of mails that are queued for delivery.

					Choose Language	- English	Logout
SMT	P Queue						
	aquala to 🧹	Search Clear		Total messages Mossages with local recipients Mossages with remote recipients Mossages with bounces Mossages with in preprocess	28 0 28 0 0		
Re-proc	ess queue				First Previous Page1 /1 100	Records per page No.	t 1 and
0.0	From •	To :	1	Subject #	Date	Size	Action
41997408	"test@testoustomer.com" <test@testoustomer.com></test@testoustomer.com>	"test@example.com" <test@example.com></test@example.com>	Incoming Limit		Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:54:47 +0000	1.07 KB	
41997422	"test@korumail.tk" <test@korumail.tk></test@korumail.tk>	"test@testcustomer.com" <test@testcustomer.com></test@testcustomer.com>	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Encoming Limit		Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:57:01 +0000	1.12 KB	
41905915	mailer-daemon@ip-172-31-25-154	test@testcustomer.com	feilure notice		24 Jul 2018 11:23:04 -0000	1.71 105	
41989783	"test@example.com" <test@example.com></test@example.com>	"test@testcustomer.com" <test@testcustomer.com></test@testcustomer.com>	Incoming Limit		Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:53:15 +0000	1.08 KB	
41989761	"test@example.com" <test@example.com></test@example.com>	"test@testcustomer.com" <test@testcustomer.com></test@testcustomer.com>	Incoming Limit		Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:52:43 +0000	1.08 KB	
41989782	"test@example.com" <test@example.com></test@example.com>	/e.com> "test@testcustomer.com" <test@testcustomer.com></test@testcustomer.com>		mit	Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:53:13 +0000	1.08 KB	
41989837	"test@testoustomer.com" <test@testoustomer.com></test@testoustomer.com>	est@testoustomer.com" "test@example.com" <test@example.com></test@example.com>		mit	Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:54:44 +0000	1.07 KB	
41997412	mailer-daemon@ip-172-31-25-154	test@testcustomer.com	failure notice		24 Jul 2018 11:03:02 -0000	1.71 105	
41997427	"test@korumail.tk" <test@korumail.tk></test@korumail.tk>	"test@testcustomer.com" <test@testcustomer.com></test@testcustomer.com>	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Limit		Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:57:10 +0000	1.12 KB	
41997419	"test@korumail.tk" <test@korumail.tk></test@korumail.tk>	"test@testcustomer.com" <test@testcustomer.com></test@testcustomer.com>	[# PROBABLE SPAM]Encoming Limit		Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:56:56 +0000	1.12 KB	
41997426	"test@korumail.tk" <test@korumail.tk></test@korumail.tk>	"test@testcustomer.com" <test@testcustomer.com></test@testcustomer.com>	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Encoming Limit		Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:57:08 +0000	1.12 KB	
41989575	mailer-deemon@ip-172-31-25-154	best@bestcustomer.com	failure notio	8	24 Jul 2018 11:23:05 -0000	1.71 105	
	"test@korumari.tk" <test@korumari.tk></test@korumari.tk>	"test@testcustomes.com" <text@testcustomes.com></text@testcustomes.com>	[* PROBABI	LE SPAMJIncoming Limit	Tue, 24 Jul 2018 10:56:59 +0000	1.12 KB	B
		"fest@festcustomer.com"		est.	Tue 14 bil 2019 10:53:19 +0000	1.02.1/2	125

SMTP Queue Report - Table of Column Descriptions								
Column Header	Description							
ID	The identification number of the email queue that holds the status or message of the queue.							
From	Sender's email address							
То	Recipient's email address							
Subject	The content of the email subject line.							
Date	Date and time that the mail was sent							
Size	Size of the file in kilobytes							
Action	Delete the mail from the SMTP queue							

At the top and bottom of the screen you have the option to set the number of records to be displayed per page.

To configure the number of records to be displayed per page

• Click the 'Records per page' drop-down

s Page1 / 1	100 ~	Records per page
Subject +	10 25	Date
	50	Ducc
[!! PROBABLE SPAM]	100	Wed, 26 Apr 201
Message	250	10:33:00 +0000
3	500	
abte recented		
ignus reserved.		

- Select the number of records per page to be displayed from the options. The default is 100.
- · Click the 'First', 'Previous', 'Next' and 'Last' buttons to navigate through the report.

Search Options

You can search for a particular record by using the search field at the upper left. Use the drop-down menus to specify granular search criteria. This is similar to the **advanced search option** explained in the 'Mail Logs' section.

7.3 Delivery Logs Report

While 'Mails Logs' record all incoming and outgoing mail traffic, 'Delivery Logs' record only those mails accepted by mail servers.

Click 'Reports' > 'Delivery Logs' to open the interface

Deliv	ery Logs				
		Sea	rch Clear Advanced sear	sh	
Sender	Recipients	U IP			
				[First Previous Page 1 / 1 250 TRecords per page Next Last
Result #	Received •	Sender #	Recipient(s) +	IP #	Details =
~	18/11/2019 09:21:46	korumail@demo-das.cdome.net	ilyas.pala@comodo.com	178.255.82.9	250 OK 1574068906 queuepid 11619
2	18/11/2019 09:15:04	korumail@demo-das.cdome.net	ilyas.pala@comodo.com	178.255.82.9	451 Greylisting activated for 18.194.134.124, please try again soon
81.201	ing a state a state				First Previous Page 1 / 1 250 T Records per page Next Las

Delivery Logs Report - Table of Column Descriptions						
Column Header	Description					
Result	Indicates the status of the mail processed by mail server. The tool tip on hovering the mouse cursor over an icon displays the action.					
	- Success: Indicates the mail has been successfully delivered to the recipient.					
	Permanent Error: Indicates the mail server failed to deliver the mail to the recipient.					
	• Temporary: Indicates it is temporary error and the server will try again to deliver.					
Received	Date and time Secure Email Gateway received the email.					
Sender	Email address information of the originator					
Recipient(s)	Email address information of the receiver					

IP	The network address of the system from where the mail was sent. The next column displays the flag of the originating country.
Details	Provides information such as the message ID and reasons for permanent and temporary error

At the top and bottom of the screen, you have the option to set the number of records to be displayed per page.

To configure the number of records to be displayed per page

Click the 'Records per page' drop-down

First Previous Page1 / 2	250 VRecords per page Next Last
Details ♦	10
wasn't able to establish an SMTP connection. (#4.4	25
wasn't able to establish an SMTP connection. (#4.4	50
wasn't able to establish an SMTP connection. (#4.4	100
wasn't able to establish an SMTP connection. (#4.4	250
wasn't able to establish an SMTP connection. (#4.4	.1)
wasn't able to establish an SMTP connection. (#4.4	.1)

- Select the number of records per page to be displayed from the options.
- Click the 'First', 'Previous', 'Next' and 'Last' buttons to navigate to the respective pages.

Search Options

You can search for a particular record or records in the report by using simple or advanced search feature. This is similar to the **search option** explained in the 'Mail Logs' section.

7.4 SMTP-AUTH Logs Report

The 'SMTP-AUTH Logs Report' contains logs of every SMTP client log-in that required authentication.

• Click reports then 'SMTP-AUTH Logs' to open the interface.

SMTP-AUTH Logs								
User								
IP								
Date From								
Date To								
Date To			Decide					
Result				-Cnoose- V				
				Search Clear				
				First Previous Page1 / 1 100 • Records per pa	ge Next Last			
Date •	IP +			User •	Result			
25/12/2019 12:18:27	158.69.182.96		guest@ec	2-18-194-134-124.eu-central-1.compute.amazonaws.com	FAILED			
25/12/2019 12:18:12	158.69.182.96		guest⊚ec	guest@ec2-18-194-134-124.eu-central-1.compute.amazonaws.com				
25/12/2019 12:17:53	158.69.182.96		guest@ec2-18-194-134-124.eu-central-1.compute.amazonaws.com					
25/12/2019 12:17:37	158.69.182.96	(2	guest@ec	FAILED				
25/12/2019 12:17:22	158.69.182.96	184	guest@ec	FAILED				
25/12/2019 12:17:07	158.69.182.96	198-	guest⊚ec	FAILED				
25/12/2019 12:16:53	158.69.182.96		guest@ec	2-18-194-134-124-eu-central-1-compute.amazonaws.com				
	SMTP-AUTH Logs Report - Table of Column Descriptions							
---------------	---							
Column Header	Description							
Result	Indicates the status of the mail processed by SMTP mail server.							
	Success : Indicates that the SMTP client has logged in successfully							
	Failed: Indicates that the SMTP client login has failed							
User	The name of the SMTP mail client							
IP	The network address of the SMTP mail client							
Date	Date and time information of the event log							

The 'Search' options allows you to search for a particular record or records based on the 'User', 'IP', 'Date From', 'Date To' or 'Result' of the authentication of SMTP client log-in.

	Choose Language 🗸 English Logout
SMTP-AUTH Logs	
User	
IP	
Date From	1/2/18 12:00
Date To	25/7/18 12:00
Result	-Choose- v
	Search Clear

- To search for records based on the entries under 'User', 'IP', 'Date From', 'Date To' or 'Result', enter the text or number fully or partially in the field and click the 'Search' button
- To refresh search, click 'Clear'.

7.5 Summary Reports

- Click 'Reports' and then click 'Summary Reports'
- The 'Summary Reports' screen in Secure Email Gateway provides a comprehensive report of filtering results of mails for all domains that are enrolled.
- The summary report is available as pie chart, bar chart and table formats.
- The tabs at the top of the interface allows to view and download the reports in graphical or table format.
- The upper portion of the screen displays the report in pie chart format and is available for daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, full from the time of installation and custom reports.
- The lower portion displays the results in bar chart format and is available on hourly, monthly and yearly basis.



You can view and download the reports in graphical as well as in table format.

- Graphical Representation
- Table Representation

To view and download the report in graphical format

Click the 'Mail Distribution' tab at the top

The results in **pie chart** format at the top and **bar chart** format at the bottom will be displayed.

• To view the results for a particular period, click the relevant tabs at the top.

Pie Chart



Click the desired period for which you want to view and download the report. The available periods are daily, weekly, monthly, yearly and the time of Secure Email Gateway installation. You can also view reports for a customized duration by entering the required dates.



The different segments of the pie chart provides the details of the filtering results for the selected period such as mails categorized as spam, phishing, blacklisted and so on.

• To download the pie chart results, click the PDF icon 🥍 and save the PDF file to your system.

Bar Chart

• Click the desired period for which you want to view and download the report in bar chart format. The available periods are daily, monthly and yearly.

Mail distribution progress				
Today This month	This year	Custom Reports		
17.5 -			1	

The report for the selected period will be displayed.



The Y-axis displays the number of mails and X-axis displays the hours/days/months for the selected period.

• To download the pie chart results, click the PDF icon 🥍 and save the PDF file to your system.

To view and download the report in table format

• Click the 'Tables' tab at the top of the 'Summary Reports' screen.

					—	
Summa	ry Rep	oorts				
Mail distribution	Table	2	Interior constant			
mail distribution		<u>)</u>				
(Contraction of the second sec			-	-		

The report in table format is available for the periods hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly and from the time of Secure Email Gateway installation. You can also define a period and generate a custom report.

- Click the desired period for which you want to view and download the report in table format.



The report for the selected period will be displayed. The first column indicates the categorization of mails, the second column displays the number for each category and the third column provides the results in percentage for each category.

To download the bar chart results, click the PDF icon



- · To download the report in XLS (spreadsheet) format, click the XLS icor
- The pdf and xls files will be downloaded to the local folder.

To generate a custom report in table format

Click the 'Custom Reports' tab at the top

The fields to select the 'From' and 'To' period will be displayed.

					Che	oose Language	 English 	Logout
Summary Report	S							
Mail distribution Tables								
This hour Today This w	veek This month	This year	All	Custom Reports				
Show records between selected	dates							
		Show						
				人				
1-					Count		Percent(%)	
0.9 -					There are no available r	ecords.		
0.7 -								
0.6 -								
0.4 -								
0.3 -								
0.2 -								
0 -								

Click on the fields or calendar icon and select the period from the calendar.

il dis	tribut	ion	1	able	S a	944 M A					
This	hour		Tod	ay	Th	is w	eek	This month	This year	All	Cu
Sho	w rec	ords	betw	/een	seled	ted (dates				
									Show		
<<	<	Ju	ıly, 20)18	>	>>	x				
	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat				
27	1	2	3	4	5	6	7				
28	8	9	10	11	12	13	14				
29	15	16	17	18	19	20	21				
30	22	23	24	25	26	27	28				
31	29	30	31	1	2	3	4				
32	5	6	7	8	9	10	11				
		144			100	Т	dav				

Click the 'Show' button after selecting the custom period.

ummary Reports				
il distribution Tables				
This hour Today This week This month This year All Custom Report	IS			
Show records between selected dates				
01/06/2018 12:00 🗍 25/07/2018 12:00 🗐 Show				
人 🗷				
	_			
17.5 - 18		Count	Percent(%)	
12.5 -	ок	18	62.1	
	PROBABLE SPAM	11	37.9	
F 7.5 -				
5 - PROBABLE SPAM				
2.5 ·				
ð gi				
ĝ				
د. Fri. Jun 1. 2018-Wed. Jul 25. 2018				

The report for the selected custom period will be displayed. The first column indicates the categorization of mails, the second column displays the number for each category and the third column provides the results in percentage for each category.

- To download the custom report in PDF format, click the PDF icon And click 'OK' in the download dialogue to save the report.
- To download the custom report in XLS (spreadsheet) format, click the XLS icon and click 'OK' in the download dialogue to save the report.
- To clear the custom period, click on the period fields or calendar icon and click the 'Clean' button.

ail dis	tribut	tion	1	able	S							
This	hou		Tod	ay	Th	is w	eek	This month	This yea	ar	All	Custom Reports
Sho	w rec	ords	betw	/een	seled	cted (dates					
01/0	6/20	18 12	2:00			25/	07/20	18 12:00 🛛 🛅	Show	w		
~~	<	Ар	oril, 2	018	>	>>	x					
	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat					L X
14	1	2	3	4	5	6	7					
15	8	9	10	11	12	13	14					
16	15	16	17	18	19	20	21					
17	22	23	24	25	26	27	28					
18	29	30	1	2	3	4	5	11				
19	6	7	8	9	10	11	12					
01/0	6/201	8 (CI	ean	12:00	Ī	Т	oday				ок	
	2	5 -									PRO	BABLE SPAM
		0 -								00300		

7.6 Domain Reports

The 'Domain Reports' interface contains detailed statistics and graphs about your monitored domains.

• To open the interface, click 'Reports' on the left then click 'Domains Reports':



You can change the domain shown in the charts by using the drop-down menu at the top of the interface.

You can view and download the reports in graphical or table format.

- Graphical Representation
- Table Representation

Graphical Representation

Mail Distribution:

The 'Mail Distribution' chart categorizes mails sent/received on the specified domain according to mail category. Categories include 'OK', 'Spam', 'Probable Spam', 'Virus' etc. Use the tabs above the chart to change the time-period covered by the chart. Choices include 'Today', 'This Week', 'This Month', 'This Year' and 'All Time'.

Mail Distribution Progress:

The 'Mail Distribution Progress' bar chart shows how many mails of each category were sent/received on each day. over a period of a month or a year.

Click the PDF icon and download the report to PDF, at the bottom-right of either of the two-chart types:

Tables:

The 'Tables' report displays the number of mails sent/received in each every mail category. The bar graph displays 'Count' on the x-axis against the category of mails on the y-axis.



To generate a custom report in table format

Click the 'Custom Reports' tab at the top

The fields to select the 'From' and 'To' period will be displayed.

	domai	n nan	ne: [testci	ustom	er.cor	m		Get reports!
Mail	disti	ibuti	on	Т	ables				
٢	Toda	y	Thi	s we	ek	Т	his n	nonti	This year All times Custom Re
	Shov	v rec	ords	betw	/een :	seled	cted (dates	
	25/0	7/201	18 12	:59		_	25/	07/2	018 12:59 🔚 Show
	~~	<	Ju	ly, 20)18	>	>>	x	
		Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	.com (Jul 25, 2018 12:59:42
	27	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
	28	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
	29	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	
	30	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
		29	30	31	1	2	3	4	
	31								

• Click on the fields or calendar icon and select the period from the calendar.

Click 'Show' after selecting the custom period.

•



The report for the selected custom period will be displayed. The first column indicates the categorization of mails, the second column displays the number for each category and the third column provides the results in percentage for each category.

• To download the custom report in PDF format, click the PDF icon And click 'OK' in the download dialogue to save the report.

	X	1
To download the custom report in XLS (spreadsheet) format, click the XLS icon		

and click 'OK' in the

download dialogue to save the report.To clear the custom period, click on the period fields or calendar icon and click the 'Clean' button.

Toda	ıy	Thi	is we	eek	Т	his n	nont	00	T	his	year	A	ll	C	u
Sho	w rec	ords	betv	veen	seleo	cted	dates								
02/0	7/20	18 12	2:00			25/	07/2	18	12:	00)	S	how	
~~	<	Ju	ı ly , 20	018	>	»	x								
	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat								
27	1	2	3	4	5	6	7								
28	8	9	10	11	12	13	14								
29	15	16	17	18	19	20	21								
30	22	23	24	25	26	27	28								
31	29	30	31	1	2	3	4								
32	5	6	7	8	9	10	11								
02/0	7/201	8 CI	ean	12:00	1	Т	oday	7							

7.7 Attachment Verdict Reports

- Click 'Reports' on the left then click 'Attachment Verdict Reports'.
- The 'Attachment Verdict Reports' interface contains all the email attachment files for which Secure Email Gateway has returned a verdict and the corresponding actions taken.

13:04:44 0 Dom	Subjact Attahment Verdict System Test Copylight® 2006-2019 Comodo Security S e Antispam name and logo are trademark Release: 6.7.9.51	Sender Sender testijkorumail.t Frist obdices, Inc. All rights re a of Comodo Security Sc Dobec	Previous k test	Page 1 Recipies @testcuston Page 1	/ 1 10 nt(s) ner.com	Records File Name NAM.EXE Records	Action PASSED Details per page Piext Last
ived 15:04:44 C Dom	Subject Attahment Verdict System Test Copylight© 2006-2019 Comodo Security S e Antispam name and logo are sadematik Release: 0.7.9.51	Sender testigikorumail.t krst soutions.the. All rights re s of Comisdo Security Se Diddee	k test	Recipier @testcuston Page1	nt(s) mer.com	File Name NAM.EXE	Action PASSED Octails per page Next Last
15:04:44 C Dome	Attahment Verdict System Test Copylight© 2006-2019 Comodo Security S e Antispam name and logo are sadematic Release: 0.7.9.51	test@korumail.t	k testi Previous iserved. Autions, Inc	@testcuston	ner.com	NAM.EXE	PASSED Details
Domy	Copylight® 2006-2019 Comodo Sacurity S e Antispam name and logo are trademarks Release: 6.7.9.51	Ling olutions, Inc. All rights re s of Comodo Security So 1050ec	Previous served. Autions, Inc	Page 1	/ 1 10	Records	per page Next Last
C Dom	Copyright® 2006-2019 Comodo Security S e Antispam name and logo are trademarks Release: 6.7.9.51	iolutions, Inc. All rights re s of Comodo Security Sc DSDec	iserved. Autions, Inc				

Attachment Verdict Report - Table of Column Descriptions				
Column Header	Description			
Received	Date and time of email received by Secure Email Gateway.			
Subject	Content in the 'Subject' line of the mails containing attachment.			
Sender	Domain details of the email sender.			
Recipient(s)	Domain name of the receiver			
File Name	File that is given a verdict.			
Action	Result of the valkyrie analysis verdict. For example 'Passed' or 'Rejected'			

To configure the number of records to be displayed per page

Click the 'Records per page' drop-down



- Select the number of records per page to be displayed from the options. The default is 10.
- Click the 'First', 'Previous', 'Next' and 'Last' buttons to navigate through the report.

The 'Search' options allows you to search for a particular record or records based on the 'Filename', 'Subject', 'Sender' or 'Recipient(s)' of the file with verdict.

- To search for records based on the entries under 'Filename', 'Subject', 'Sender' or 'Recipient(s)' of the file with verdict reports, click any one of the radio buttons and enter the text or number fully or partially in the text field and then click 'Search'
- To refresh search, click 'Clear'.

7.8 Original Mail Request

- Click 'Reports' > 'Original Mail Request List' to view this interface.
- Secure Email Gateways' containment feature replaces untrusted attachments with a link that allows the recipient to download a 'safe' version of the file. The safe version will open inside a secure container on the user's computer.
- The 'Original Mail Request' feature lets recipients download the original version of a mail IF its attachments get contained.

• Recipients can request the original by clicking a link in their email. The request must then be approved by an admin before the mail is released.

Test		
	From	test@korumail.tk 💄 +
	То	mehmel@korumail.tk
	Date	Tue 15:49
You can dow	nload vo	
rou can dow	moau yo	ur attachment <u>test.pdf</u> via the link.

• Click the original email link and complete the short request form:

Original Mail Request
E-Mail*
Comment*
Request

• Administrators can approve or reject the request in 'Reports' > 'Original Mail Request List':

EWAY	New Mail Reg	wests								
	Request Date	Original Mail Date	Queue M	Subject	То	From	Request lp	Mail Address Which Wants To Send Original Mail	Comment	R
	30/07/2018 09:00:10	26/07/2018 16:32:12	14641-1532622730-49798	It PROBABLE SPAMJAttahment Verdict System Test	mehmel@korumail.tk	1est@korumail.tk	172.31.25.154	mehmet@korumail.tk	Test Request	B
	Replied Mail R	lequests		The	re are no available re	ecords.				
Mail Logs SMTP Queue Delivery Logs SMTP-AUTH Logs Summary Reports Domain Reports Attachment Verdict Reports Original Mail Request List				is reserved.						

8 Quarantine & Archive

- The 'Quarantine & Archive' sections allows administrators to configure the number of days that logs and archived files should be retained in Secure Email Gateway.
- Details of 'Quarantine Logs' and 'Archived Mails' can also be viewed, category changed and records exported to a CSV file.

			Choose Language	• English	Logout			
	Quarantine & Archive Settings							
	General E-mail Reports Admin E-mail Reports							
> system	Delivery Logs Deleted Time (max to 729 days) *	60						
> Modules	E-mail Logs Deleted Time (max to 729 days) *	60						
Profile Management	Archive remove interval (max. 729 days) *	30						
Reports	Attachment Verdict System record remove interval (Max 729 days) *	60						
· Quarantine & Archive	Quarantine remove interval (max. 30 days) *	5						
Quarantine & Archive	Duration of storage of original mail and attachments on server.Must be between 1 and 360. *	10						
Settings		Save						
Quarantine Logs Archived Mails								
	Copyright8 2006-2019 Correcto Security Dome Antopiam name and logo are tradema Release: 6.7.9	Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved. rks of Carrodo Security Solutions, Inc. 50/00ec						

Click the following links for more details:

- Quarantine & Archive Settings
- Quarantine Logs
- Archived Mails

8.1 Quarantine & Archive Settings

- Click Quarantine & Archive' > 'E-mail Reports'
- End-users can view their quarantined emails in the web interface.
- The 'Email Report' section allows administrators to configure the URL of the 'Quarantine Webmail' page. You can also configure the email notification subject line, from address, body text, and the time the mail should be sent out.
- To enable quarantine reports:
 - Activate 'Send daily quarantine report to recipients' in the 'Archive And Quarantine' tab of the profile applied to your users.

	Quarantine & Archive Settings	Choose Language Finglish					
GATEWAY	General E-mail Reports Admin E-mail Reports						
> System	Delivery Logs Deleted Time (max to 729 days) *	60					
Modules	E-mail Logs Deleted Time (max to 729 days) *	50					
Profile Management	Archive remove interval (max. 729 days)	30					
Reports	Attachment Verdict System record remove interval (Max 729 days) *	60					
· Quarantine & Archive	Quarantine remove interval (max. 30 days) *	5					
Quarantine & Archive	Duration of storage of original mail and attachments on server.Must be between 1 and 360. "	10					
Settings Quarantine Logs		Save					
Quarantine Logs Archived Mails Copyright® 2006-2010 Camodo Security Solutions, Inc. Doms Antispam name and logo are trademarks of Corrodo Security Solutions, Inc. Release: 6.7.8.50908cs							

Click the following links for more details:

- Quarantine & Archive General Settings
- Email Reports Settings

8.1.1 Quarantine & Archive General Settings

- Click 'Quarantine & Archive' > 'Quarantine & Archive Settings'
- The 'Quarantine & Archive Settings' interface lets you set retention periods for mail logs, quarantine logs and archived mail.
- You can also set the method of user authentication. This is required for users to access their quarantined messages in the webmail interface.

Quarantine & Archive Settings					
General E-mail Reports Admin E-mail Repo	rts				
Delivery Logs Deleted Time (max to 729 days) *	60				
E-mail Logs Deleted Time (max to 729 days) *	60				
Archive remove interval (max. 729 days) *	30				
Attachment Verdict System record remove interval (Max 729 days)*	60				
Quarantine remove interval (max. 30 days) *	5				
Duration of storage of original mail and attachments on server.Must be between 1 and 360.	10				
	Save				
	Save				

Q	Quarantine & Archive General Settings - Table of Parameters					
Parameter	Description					
Delivery Logs Deleted Time	Enter the number of days for which the email delivery logs will be retained. The maximum period is 729 days. See 'Delivery Logs Report' for more details.					
E-mail Logs Deleted Time	Enter the number of days for which the email logs will be retained. The maximum period is 729 days. See 'Mail Logs Report' for more details.					
Archive remove interval	Enter the number of days for which the archived mail records will be retained. The maximum period is 729 days. See 'Archived Mails' for more details.					
Attachment Verdict System record remove Interval	Enter the number of days for which the Attachment verdict records will be retained. The maximum period is 729 days. See 'Attachment Verdict System' for more details.					
Quarantine remove interval	Enter the number of days after which the 'Quarantined Logs' will be removed. The maximum period that can be set is 30 days. See 'Quarantine Logs' for more details.					
Duration of storage of original mail and attachments on server	This setting pertains to Containment. Specify the number of days that emails including attachments should be retained on SEG server. The period should be between 1 and 360 days. Original emails and contained attachments are deleted after this period.					

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

8.1.2 Email Reports Settings

- Click Quarantine & Archive' tab > 'E-mail Reports' tab in the 'Quarantine & Archive' screen.
- Secure Email Gateway allow users to access their quarantined emails via a separate web based quarantine
 page that contains all their quarantined messages.
- The 'Email Report' section allows administrators to configure the URL of the 'Quarantine Webmail' page, the email notification subject line, from address, mail message template and the days and time the email should be sent to users.
- The 'Send daily quarantine report to recipients' check box should also be enabled in the 'Archive And

r L Logout

Quarantine' tab of the profile that is applied to the users.

General	E-mail Reports	Admin E-mail R	eports						·····
		Mail Subject	E-mail Qu	arantine Re)				
		Mail From	korumail@)ip-172-31-	3				
		Base URL	https://ip-1	72-31-25-1	1				
		Mail Template	DOCTYF<br "http: <html> <head> <meta http<br=""/><style> body { fc a { text-c h1 { font mail { fc #list the #list the #list tree #footer { </style> </head> Merhaba </html>	PE HTML PU //www.w3.o -equiv="Co ont-family: A lecoration: 1 -size: 100% ont-weight 1 ad { backgr dd { backgr dd { backgr en { backgr font-size: 1	JBLIC "-//W3C// rg/TR/html4/loc ntent-Type" con rial, Helvetica, s none; } bold; } ound-color: #8/ pound-color: #8/ pound-color: #EF round-color: #EF round-color: #EF 1px; text-align:	DTD HTML 4 se.dtd"> tent="text/htm sans-serif; } AEA8; color: FFFF; } EEEEE; } center; } }, in bulundudi	4.01 Tran: ml; chars #FFFFFF	sitional//EN" et=UTF-8" /> =;	
		Days To Send	Monday	☑ Tuesday	V Wednesday	☑ Thursday	✓ Friday	Saturday	Sunday
		Send Hour	00:00 01:00 02:00 03:00 04:00 05:00 06:00 07:00 08:00 09:00 10:00 11:00 12:00 13:00 14:00 15:00 16:00 17:00 18:00 19:00 20:00 21:00 22:00 22:00 22:00						

Quarantine & Archive - E-mail Reports Settings - Table of Parameters				
Parameter	Description			
Mail Subject	Enter the subject line for the automated email report			
Mail From	Enter the address from which the email reports will be sent			
Base URL	Enter URL of 'Quarantine Webmail' page that users should access to view their quarantined emails			
Mail Template	The message body of the mail.			
Days to Send	Select the day(s) to send the email notifications			
Send Hour	Select the hour of the day to send the email notifications for the selected days.			

- Click 'Default' to restore the settings to default values.
- Click 'Preview' to view the mail that will be sent to users

Quarantine Mail Preview	×
Merhaba user@domain.com, Karantinadaki tüm e-postalarnızın bulunduğu web tabanlı karantina sayfanıza ulaşmak için buraya tıklayınız. Hello user@domain.com, Click here to access the web based quarantine page which contains your all quarantine messages. Action / Eylem Date / Tarih From / Gönderici Subject / Konu Status / Durum Release / BirakWed, Jul 25 13:20 UTC 2018user@domain.comPreview subjectCERTANLY SPAM Release / BirakWed, Jul 25 13:20 UTC 2018user@domain.comSecond subject CERTANLY SPAM	
KoruMail Messaging Gateway	
Test	
Recipient	Send
Close	

- To test if the mails are delivered successfully, enter the user's email address in the 'Recipient' field and click 'Send'
- Click 'Close' to return to the 'E-mail Reports' interface.
- Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

8.1.3 Admin E-mail Reports Settings

- Click 'Quarantine & Archive Settings' > 'Admin E-mail Reports' tab in the 'Quarantine & Archive' screen.
- Secure Email Gateway allows administrators to access all quarantined emails via a separate web based quarantine page that contains all their quarantined messages.

• The 'Admin Email Reports' section allows admins to configure the URL of the 'Quarantine Webmail' page, the email notification subject line, from address, to address mail message template and the days and time the email should be sent to users.

	Choose Language V English
Quarantine & Archive Settings	
General E-mail Reports Admin E-mail Reports	
Селети стали перити Ралин стали перити	
Mail Subject	E-mail Quarantine Re
Mail From	korumail@ip-172-31-3
Mail To	
Base URL	https://tp-172-31-25-1
Mail Template	
Days To Send	Monday 🗹 Tuesday 🗹 Wednesday 🖉 Thursday 🖉 Friday 🖉 Saturday 🖉 Sunday
Send Hour	00100 0100 0200 0200 0300 0400 0500 07:00 06:00 09:00 10:00 11:00 12:00 13:00 14:00 18:00 19:00 20:00 21:00 23:00 23:00 ×
	Save

Quarantine & Archive – Admin E-mail Reports Settings - Table of Parameters		
Parameter	Description	
Mail Subject	Enter the content for subject line for the automated email report	
Mail From	Enter the address from which the email reports will be sent	
Mail To	Enter the administrator's email address at which the email reports will be received	
Base URL	Enter URL of 'Quarantine Webmail' page that users should access to view their quarantined emails	
Mail Template	The message body of the mail.	
Days to Send	Select the day(s) when you want to send the email notifications	
Send Hour	Select the hour of the day to send the email notifications for the selected days.	

• Click 'Save' to apply your changes.

8.2 Quarantine Logs

- · Click 'Quarantine & Archive' then 'Quarantine Logs'
- A log is created every time a mail is placed in quarantine. These logs can be viewed in the 'Quarantine Logs'.
- You can set how long logs are kept in the 'Quarantine & Archive General Settings' area.
- The interface allows you to take actions such as delete, mark as 'not spam', resend the message to the intended recipient and more.

	Quarantine Logs					
GATEWAY	Subject Sender Recipi	nts P	Dear Advanced search	● Last Nonth ○	Lest 2 Months 🔿 Les	st 3 Months 🔿 Last 8 Months 🔿 All Times
System	Actions U				Province Page	/1250 - Records per page Heat La
-trans.	Subject	Result Received	Sender	Recipient(s)	- P	Details
SMTP	V (II PROBABLE SPAH)Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2010 10:57:12	teat#korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 43.0
Modules	🗌 🛩 (!! PROBABLE SPAN)Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2018 10:57:10	test#korumeil.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 43.0
	🔲 🛩 [!! PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2018 10:57:09	test#korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 43.
Profile Management	📋 🛩 (!! PROBABLE SPAH]Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2018 10:57:07	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 43.
Denorte	🗌 🛩 [!! PROBABLE SPAH]Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2018 10:57:05	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 45.
neponta	🔲 🐓 [!! PROBABLE SPAH]Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2018 10:57:03	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 45.
Quarantine & Archive	🔲 🛩 [# PROBABLE SPAM]Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2018 10:57:02	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 45.
	🔲 🐓 (II PROBABLE SPAH)Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2010 10:57:00	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 43.
Quarantine & Archive	🗌 🛩 (II PROBABLE SPAH)Incoming Li	PSPAH 24/07/2018 10:56:57	test@korumail.tk	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 43.0
Settings	🗌 🛩 (!! PROBABLE SPAN]Incoming Li	PSPAN 24/07/2018 10:53:22	test@example.com	test@testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	Classified as probable spam Score: 43.0
Quarantine Logs	Actions U				Previous Page	11 250 U Records per page Hast La
Archived Mails						

Quarantine Logs - Table of Column Descriptions		
Column Header	Description	
lcon	Status of action for the mail applied by SEG after the filtering process. Placing your mouse cursor over an icon will show a description of the action.	
	Relayed: Indicates the mail has successfully passed the filtering process and user verified.	
	I Rejected: Indicates the mail is rejected by SEG after the filtering process and reject message sent to the sender mail server.	
	I Discarded: Indicates the mail is quarantined	
Subject	The content in the 'Subject' line of the mails	
Result	The verdict on a email after filtering process. For example, 'CSPAM' means Secure Email Gateway found the mail was 'Certainly Spam'.	
Received	Date and time of email was received by Secure Email Gateway	
Sender	Email address information of the originator	
Recipient(s)	Email address information of the receiver	
IP	The network address of the system from where the mail was sent.	

Details	Reason why a mail is quarantined and spam score if it is marked as spam.
---------	--

At the top and bottom of the screen, you have the option to set the number of records to be displayed per page and take desired actions such as delete, mark as not spam and so on.

To configure the number of records to be displayed per page

Click the 'Records per page' drop-down

					All Times
FIrst Previous	Page1]/2	250 ~	Records per page I	Next
Recipient(s)	IP		25	Details	5
meone@comodo.ordabirbahce.com	213.14.70.194	0	50 100	ed as certainly sp	am Score
meone@comodo.ordabirbahce.com	213.14.70.194	0	250	ed as certainly sp	am Score
meone@comodo.ordabirbahce.com	213.14.70.194	C *	Classifi	ed as certainly sp	am Score
meone@comodo.ordabirbahce.com	213.14.70.194	6	Classifi	ed as certainly sp	am Score
meone@comodo.ordabirbahce.com	213.14.70.194	С×	Classifi	ed as certainly sp	am Score
meone@comodo.ordabirbahce.com	213.14.70.194	C+	Classifi	ed as certainly sp	am Score
meone@comodo.ordabirbahce.com	213.14.70.194	(C)	Classifi	ed as certainly or	

- Select the number of records per page to be displayed from the options.
- Click the 'First', 'Previous', 'Next' and 'Last' buttons to navigate to the respective pages.

To take actions on log entries

Click the 'Actions' drop-down

Subject Sender	Reci	pients 🗌	IP Search
Actions		Do!	
Actions Delete		Result	Received
Mark As Not Spam	в	PSPAM	25.04.2017 13:55
Resend message(s) to the recipient(s)	в	PSPAM	25.04.2017 07:32
NOT SPAM + resend to the recipient(s)		SPAM	25.04.2017 07:30
Save As CSV	а	PSPAM	25.04.2017 07:29
□ 💚 [!! SPAM]Staff application		SPAM	25.04.2017 07:28
🗌 🚳 [!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Indian_Lar	٦	CSPAM	21.04.2017 05:36
Kan a second secon	1	CSPAM	21.04.2017 05:36
[!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Persian_La	1	CSPAM	21.04.2017 05:36

Select the desired action from the drop-down and click 'Do'

Log Details

Clicking anywhere on the row of a log record will display the details of the quarantined mail log.

tail Logs	
	🔹 🐟
Received	24/07/2018 10.57:12
Queue ID	23198-1532429832-155266
Message ID	26817.9269946529-sendEmai@mehmets-imac-2
Action	A
Result	PROBABLE SPAM
Score	45.0
Sender	test@korumail.tk Add Email In Black List 🗸
Recipient(s)	test@testcustomer.com
RFC2822 Sender "test@korumail.tk" <test@korumail.tk></test@korumail.tk>	
RFC2822 Recipient(s)	"test@testcustomer.com"
Subject	(! PROBABLE SPAM)Incoming Limit
IP	213.14.70.194 Add Black List 🧹 📑
Location	Turkey
Size	809 B
Matched Profile	Default Incoming Profile (defined by user: admin)
Details	Classified as probable spam
Relayed	No
Download Forward Resend Resend	a as attachment Not spam Spam Close Details

The details screen allows you to mark the mail log as 'Spam' or 'Not spam' depending the mail category. You can also add the sender, sending domain and IP to blacklist or whitelist, forward, resend and resend as attachment.

• To mark an email as 'Spam' or 'Not spam', click the relevant button at the bottom of the screen.

The changes will be saved and mails from the sender will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

• To forward the mail, click 'Forward', enter the mail ID in the 'Email Forward' dialog and click 'Send'.

E-mail Forward	
E-mail :	
Send	Close

- Click 'Resend' to send the mail again.
- · Click 'Resend as attachment' to send the mail as an attachment.
- To save the log record to your computer, click the 'Download' link and save the mail record.
- To add the sender or domain to blacklist/whitelist, click the drop-down in the 'Sender' row.

SCOLE	104.0	
Sender	buyuklukucuklu@pala.com	Add Email In Black List 🗸 📑
		Add Email In Black List
Recipient(s)	someone@comodo.ordabirb	Add Email In White List
RFC2822 Sender	buyuklukucuklu@pala.com	Add Domain In Black List Add Domain In White List
RFC2822 Recipient(s)	someone@comodo.ordabirb	ahce.com
Subject	[!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Persian_	این بِک شمداند : Lang_this_is_test
IP	213.14.70.194 Add Black L	ist 🗸 💽

Select the category from the options that you want to add the email and click the ا button beside it.

Description			
Save C	ose		

• Enter the reason for changing the category and click 'Save' .

The changes will be saved and mails from the sender will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

• To add the originating IP to blacklist/whitelist, click the drop-down in the 'IP' row.

Subject	Laguna
IP	10.100.132.32 Add White List
Location	Add black List Add White List
Size	1586
Matched Profile	Default Incoming Profile (defined by user: admin)
Details	
Relaved	No
Not spam Close	

Select the category from the options that you want to add the IP and click the
 button beside it.

IP [escription
S	ave Close

• Enter the reason for changing the category and click 'Save'.

The changes will be saved and mails from the IP will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

You can view the previous or next record by click the < Implementation buttons at the top of a details screen.

Search Options

You can search for a particular record or records in the quarantine log by using simple or advanced search feature.

- Simple Search
- Advanced Search

Simple Search

The simple search options allows you to search for a particular record or records based on 'Subject', 'Sender', 'Recipients' and / or 'IP' details only.

Quarantine Logs						
Subject	Sender	Recipients	🗌 IP	Search	Clear	Advanced search
Actions		V Do!				

- To search for records based on the entries under 'Subject', 'Sender', 'Recipients' and / or 'IP' columns, enter the text or number fully or partially in the field and click 'Search'
- To search for records based on the entries under a particular column or columns, select the respective check boxes, enter the text or number fully or partially in the field and click 'Search'. For example, if you want to search for a particular record for sender and recipients, select the 'Sender' and 'Recipients' check boxes, enter the text fully or partially in the field and click 'Search'.

Advanced Search

The 'Advanced Search' option allows you a more granular search by including rules and filters.

• Click the 'Advanced Search' link at the top of the screen.

Quara	ntine Lo	gs			
Subject	Sender	Recipients	□ IP	Search	Clear Advanced search
Actions		V Do!			

The 'Advanced Search' option will be displayed.

_] Subject	_				Search	Clear	Advanced search
	∟ Subject	∟ Sender	Recipients	L IP			

The first drop-down contains the column headers that can be selected for an advanced search.

	3		Coarch
Subject Sender	Re	cipients	
Subject 🗸	CONT		
Subject			
From Address			
To Address			
Remote IP		Do!	
Regult		1	
Received	000000	Result	Received
Incoming Mail/Outgoing Mail	Lan	CSPAM	21.04.2017 05:36:5
ERTAINLY SPAM]Persian	n_La	CSPAM	21.04.2017 05:36:4

The second column contains the condition for a search, which depends on the item selected in the first column and text/number entered or options selected in the third column.

Quarantine L	ogs					
Subject Sender		ecinients		Search	Clear	Advanced search
Subject	~ CON	TAINS				
	EQU	ALS				
	NOT	EQUALS				Search
	CON	TAINS				
Actions	<u>NOT</u>	Do!				
Subject		Result	Rece	eived		Sender
🗌 🝪 [!! CERTAINLY SPAM]I	ndian_Lan	CSPAM	21.04.201	7 05:36:51	me@pala	a.com
🗌 🙆 [!! CERTAINLY SPAM]P	ersian_La	CSPAM	21.04.201	7 05:36:47	buyuklul	kucuklu@pala.com
		CSPAM	21 04 201	7.05/36/47		

Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide | © 2020 Comodo Security Solutions Inc. | All rights reserved.

The third column allows you to enter the text/number or select from the options depending on the selection in the first column. For example, choosing 'Subject', 'From Address' or 'Remote IP' allows you to enter the text in the third column

Quarantine Logs							
				Search	Clear	Advanced sear	
Subject	Sender	Recipients	□ IP				
Subject		~ CONTAINS	~ Importan	t			
						Search	
Actions		~ Do!					

If you select 'Action' or 'Result' in the first column, then further options can be selected from the third column.

		Search	Clear Advanced se
Subject Sender	Recipients	IP	
Action	~ EQUALS	V DELAYED	✓ -]
ND 🗸 Subject	~ EQUALS		+
		PASSED REJECTED	Search
Actions	V Do!		

If you select 'Received' in the first column, then you can enter a date or select from the calendar.

Quarantine Logs

Subject Sender R	ecipients	[] IP		Se	arch		Clea	r A	Advanced search	
Received V EQU	ALS ~						+				
		<<	<	Ар	ril, 2()17	>	>>	x	Search	Clear
			Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat		
Actions	Do!	13	26	27	28	29	30	31	1		
		14	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
L Subject	Result	15	q	10	11	12	13	14	15	Sender	
🗌 😫 [!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Indian_Lan	CSPAM					12				-)m	
🗌 🚳 [!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Persian_La	CSPAM	16	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	uklu@pala.com	
[!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Persian_La	CSPAM	17	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	uklu@pala.com	
🗌 🔇 [!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Persian_La	CSPAM	18	30	1	2	3	4	5	6	uklu@pala.com	
[!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Persian_La	CSPAM							Т	odav	uklu@pala.com	
🗌 🚯 [!! CERTAINLY SPAM]Abyssinian	CSPAM		×1.5	4.20	17 0.		+7 g	oygo	Yep	ala.com	

You can add more filters by clicking

for narrowing down your search.

					Search	Clear	Advanced sear	<u>ch</u>
Sul	ibject 🗌 Seno	der 🗌 Recip	ients	□ IP				
	Received	~	EQUALS	~				(
and ~	From Address	~	EQUALS	~				
OR ~	V To Address	~	EQUALS	~				
and ~	Remote IP	~	EQUALS	~]			
OR ~	- Action	~	EQUALS	\sim	DELAYED	\sim		
OR ~	Result	~	EQUALS	~	ANTISPOOF	ING REJEC	T N	7 +

You can remove a filter by clicking the _____ button beside it.

You can create a filter rule by selecting 'AND' or 'OR' option beside each of the added filter.

- · Click 'Clear' to remove the advanced search rules.
- Click 'Search' to start the search per the filter rule.

The items will be searched for in the ascending order and results displayed.

• To remove the advanced search field, click the 'Advanced search' link again.

Administrators can filter results on monthly basis. The filters available are 'Last Month', 'Last 2 Months', 'Last 3 Months', 'Last 6 Months' and All Times.

• To view the results of the last month, click the 'Last Month' radio button.



8.3 Archived Mails

- Click 'Quarantine & Archive' > 'Archived Mails'
- The 'Archived Mails' interface displays a log of all archived mails.
- The number of days the logs are stored depends on the settings configured in the 'Quarantine & Archive General Settings' screen.
- The interface allows you to take actions such as to delete, mark as spam, mark as not spam and more.

	Archived Mails
GATEWAY	Search Clear Advanced search Clear Advanced search Clear Advanced search Clear Subject Sender Recipients P
► System	Actors Dol Rest Pre-Nos Paget /1250 Percents per page lient Last
► SMTP	Subject Result Received Sender Recipient(s) IP Details
+ Modules	Construction of the stand
Profile Management	V [*] PROBABLE SPAN[Test Email PSPAN 25/07/2018 13:01:59 test@korumañ.tk test@testcustomer.com 213.14.70.194 Classified as probable spam Scores 40.0
+ Reports	
Quarantine & Archive Quarantine & Archive Settings Quarantine Logs Archived Mails	Copyright0 2005-2018 Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved Dome Antisgen name and logic are trademarks of Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. Release: 6.7.1.8072933

	Archived Mails - Table of Column Descriptions
Column Header	Description
Icon	Indicates the status of the mail after the filtering process. Placing your mouse cursor over an icon will show a description of the action.
	Relayed: Indicates the mail successfully passed the filtering process
	Provide the mail was rejected by Secure Email Gateway and a reject message was sent to the sender's mail server.
	Discarded: Indicates the mail is quarantined
Subject	The content in the 'Subject' line of the mails
Result	The verdict on an mail after the filtering process.
Received	Date and time Secure Email Gateway received the email

Sender	Email address information of the originator
Recipient(s)	Email address information of the receiver
IP	The network address of the system from where the mail was sent.
Details	Reason why a mail is quarantined and spam score if it is marked as spam.

At the top and bottom of the screen, you have the option to set the number of records to be displayed per page and take desired actions such as delete, mark as not spam and so on.

To configure the number of records to be displayed per page

Click the 'Records per page' drop-down

First Pre	vious Page1		/ 1	250 🗸 R	ecords per page Next Las
Recipient(s)	IP			10	Details
testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	C *	C	25	s probable spam Score: 40.
testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	C^	C	50	s probable spam Score: 40.
testcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	C*	C	100	s probable spam Score: 40.
First Dre	vioue Dage 1		11	250	acorde per page Next

- Select the number of records per page to be displayed from the options.
- Click the 'First', 'Previous', 'Next' and 'Last' buttons to navigate to the respective pages.

To act on log entries

Click the 'Actions' drop-down

^

		Search	Clear Ad				
Subject Sender Reci	pients	P					
Actions 🗸 Do	o!						
Actions	esult	Received	Sende				
Delete	PAM	25/07/2018 13:02:02	test@korun				
Mark As Not Spam	PAM	25/07/2018 13:02:01	test@korum				
Mark As Spam	рам	25/07/2018 13:01:59	test@korun				
Resend message(s) to the recipient(s)			-				
NOT SPAM + resend to the recipient(s))						
Download selected entries	richt®	2006-2018 Comodo Securit	v Solutione Inc.				
Save As CSV	ntispan	name and logo are tradem	arks of Comodo				
	Release: 6.7.1.8972932						

· Select the desired action from the drop-down and click 'Do'

Search Options

You can search for a particular record or records in the quarantine log by using simple or advanced search feature.

- Simple Search
- Advanced Search

Simple Search

The simple search options allows you to search for a particular record or records based on 'Subject', 'Sender', 'Recipients' and / or 'IP' details only.

Archived Ma	ils									
Subject Sender	r 🗆 Rec	cipients	9	Search	Clear Advances	i search	Last Month C	Last 2 Months) u	ast 3 Months O Last 6 Months O All Times
Actions		oo!					First Pre	vious Page1		/ 1 250 VRecords per page Next Law
Subjec		Result	Receiv	ed	Sender		Recipient(s)	IP		Details
🗌 🛩 [!! PROBABLE SPA	M]Test Email	PSPAM	25/07/20181	3:02:02	test@korumail.tk	test@t	estcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	6	Classified as probable spam Score: 40.0
🛄 ؇ (!! PROBABLE SPA	M]Test Email	PSPAM	25/07/2018 1	3:02:01	test@korumail.tk	test@t	estcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	٥.	Classified as probable spam Score: 40.0
🗌 🕪 (!! PROBABLE SPAI	M]Test Email	PSPAH	25/07/2018	3:01:59	test@korumail.tk	test@t	estcustomer.com	213.14.70.194	01	Classified as probable spam Score: 40.0
Actions	~ 0	lot						vious Page1		/ 1 250 VRecords per page Treat

- To search for records based on the entries under 'Subject', 'Sender', 'Recipients' and / or 'IP' columns, enter the text or number fully or partially in the field and click 'Search'
- To search for records based on the entries under a particular column or columns, select the respective check boxes, enter the text or number fully or partially in the field and click the 'Search'. For example, if you want to search for a particular record for sender and recipients, select the 'Sender' and 'Recipients' check boxes, enter the text fully or partially in the field and click 'Search'.

Advanced Search

The 'Advanced Search' option allows you a more granular search by including rules and filters.

• Click the 'Advanced Search' link at the top of the screen.

Archived Mails						
		Search	Clear Advanced	search		
Subject Sender Rec	ipients	□ IP				
Actions	o!					
Subject	Result	Received	Sender	Recip		
🗌 ؇ [!! PROBABLE SPAM]Test Email	PSPAM	25/07/2018 13:02:02	test@korumail.tk	test@testcus		

The 'Advanced Search' option will be displayed.

			Sear	ch Clear	Advance	ed search
Subject	Sender Recip	ients 🗌] IP			
ubject	~ CONTAINS	~				

The first drop-down contains the column headers that can be selected for an advanced search.

Archived Mails	;						
Subject Sender	Search						
Subject	CONTAINS	5 ~					
Subject							
From Address To Address							
Remote IP Action	~ Do!	~ Do!					
Result Received		Result	Received				
Incoming Mail/Outgoing Mail	essage	PSPAM	25.04.2017 07:32:4				
Actions							

The second column contains the condition for a search, which depends on the item selected in the first column and text/number entered or options selected in the third column.

Archived	Mails	
		Search Clear
Subject	Sender 🗌 Recipients 🔲 IP	F
Subject	✓ CONTAINS ✓	+
	EQUALS	
	NOTEQUALS	
	CONTAINS	
[NOTCONTAINS	
Actions	V D0	

The third column allows you to enter the text/number or select from the options depending on the selection in the first column. For example, choosing 'Subject', 'From Address' or 'Remote IP' allows you to enter the text in the third column

			Search C	lear Advanced search
Subject	Sender Recipient	s 🗌 IP		
ubject		~	+	

If you select 'Action' or 'Result' in the first column, then further options can be selected from the third column.

Archiv	ed Mails		
Subject	Sender Recipients		Search Clear Advanced search
Action	FOUALS		(+)
		DELAYED	Cararab Chara
		DISCARDED	Search
Actions	Dol	PASSED	
Actions		REJECTED	
	Subject Result	Receive	d Sender

If you select 'Received' in the first column, then you can enter a date or select from the calendar.

]	Searc	h	Clea	r į	Advanced	search
Subject Sender Red	cipients			IP							
Received v EQUALS	~						+				
			<	Ju	ly, 20	18	>	>>	x	rch	Clear
			Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat		
Actions V)o!	27	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		
Subject	Result	28	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	->1	F
☐ ₩ [!! PROBABLE SPAM]Test Email	PSPAN	29	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	nail.tk	test@te
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓	PSPAN	30	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	nail.tk	test@te
🗌 ؇ [!! PROBABLE SPAM]Test Email	PSPAN	31	29	30	31	1	2	3	4	nail.tk	test@te
Actions	00!	32	5	6	7	8	9	10	11		
								То	day		(1995).

You can add more filters by clicking _____ for narrowing do

for narrowing down your search.

You can remove a filter by clicking the _____ button beside it.

You can create a filter rule by selecting 'AND' or 'OR' option beside each of the added filter.

• Click 'Clear' to remove the advanced search rules.

• Click 'Search' to start the search per the filter rule.

The items will be searched for in the ascending order and results displayed.

• To remove the advanced search field, click the 'Advanced search' link again.

Administrators can filter results on monthly basis. The filters available are 'Last Month', 'Last 2 Months', 'Last 3 Months', 'Last 6 Months' and All Times.

To view the results of the last month, click the 'Last Month' radio button.

Last Month O Last 2 Months O Last 3 Months O Last 6 Months O All Times
--

Details of a Log Entry

Clicking anywhere on the row of a log record will display the details of the archived mail log.

Mail Logs	×					
	(
Received	25/07/2018 13:02:02					
Queue ID	24504-1532523722-182151					
Message ID	908615.080497356-sendEmail@mehmets-imac-2					
Action	A					
Result	PROBABLE SPAM					
Score	40.0					
Sender	test@korumail.tk 🛛 Add Email In Black List 🗸 📑					
Recipient(s)	test@testcustomer.com					
RFC2822 Sender	"test@korumail.tk" <test@korumail.tk></test@korumail.tk>					
RFC2822 Recipient(s)	"test@testcustomer.com"					
Subject	[" PROBABLE SPAM]Test Email					
IP	213.14.70.194 Add Black List 🗸 📑					
Location:	Turkey					
Size	801 B					
Matched Profile	Default Incoming Profile (defined by user: admin)					
Details	Classified as probable spam					
Relayed	No					
Download Forward Resend Resend	as attachment Not spam Spam Close Details					

The details screen allows you to mark the mail log as 'Spam' or 'Not spam' depending the mail category. You can also add the sender, sending domain and IP to blacklist or whitelist, forward, resend and resend as attachment.

• To mark an email as 'Spam' or 'Not spam', click the relevant button at the bottom of the screen.

The changes will be saved and mails from the sender will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

• To forward the mail, click 'Forward'', enter the mail ID in the 'Email Forward' dialog and click 'Send'.

E-mail Forward	
E-mail :	
Send	Close

- Click 'Resend' to send the mail again.
- Click 'Resend as attachment' to send the mail as an attachment.
- To save the log record to your computer, click the 'Download' link and save the mail record.
- To add the sender or domain to blacklist/whitelist, click the drop-down in the 'Sender' row.

Sender	test@korumail.tk 🛛 Add Email In Black List 🔍 📑	
Recipient(s)	test@testcustomer Add Email In Black List	
RFC2822 Sender	"test@korumail.tk" Add Email In White List	
RFC2822 Recipient(s)	"test@testcustome Add Domain In Black List	
Subject	[PROBABLE SPAL Add Domain In White List	
IP	213.14.70.194 Add Black List 🧹 📑	
Location:	Turkey	
Size	801 B	

Select the category from the options that you want to add the email and click the
 button beside it.

Description	
Save Close	

• Enter the reason for changing the category and click the 'Save' button.

The changes will be saved and mails from the sender will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

• To add the originating IP to blacklist/whitelist, click the drop-down in the 'IP' row.

Subject	[!! PROBABLE SPAM]Test Message	
IP	46.2.135.238 Add Black List 🗸 💽	
	Add Black List	
Location:	Atakoy, Diyarbal Add White List	
Size	665 B	
Pastohad Drafila	Default Outgoing Profile (defined by user: admin)	

Select the category from the options that you want to add the IP and click the
 button beside it.
Comodo Secure Email Gateway Enterprise - Admin Guide Comodo

IP Desc	ription
	.:
Save	Close

• Enter the reason for changing the category and click 'Save'.

The changes will be saved and mails from the IP will be applied the new settings by Secure Email Gateway.

You can view the previous or next record by click the < box buttons at the top of a details screen.

About Comodo Security Solutions

Comodo Security Solutions is a global innovator of cybersecurity solutions, protecting critical information across the digital landscape. Comodo provides complete, end-to-end security solutions across the boundary, internal network and endpoint with innovative technologies solving the most advanced malware threats. With over 80 million installations of its threat prevention products, Comodo provides an extensive suite of endpoint, website and network security products for MSPs, enterprises and consumers.

Continual innovation and a commitment to reversing the growth of zero-day malware, ransomware, data-breaches and internet-crime distinguish Comodo Security Solutions as a vital player in today's enterprise and home security markets.

About Comodo Cybersecurity

In a world where preventing all cyberattacks is impossible, Comodo Cybersecurity delivers an innovative cybersecurity platform that renders threats useless, across the LAN, web and cloud. The Comodo Cybersecurity platform enables customers to protect their systems and data against even military-grade threats, including zero-day attacks. Based in Clifton, New Jersey, Comodo Cybersecurity has a 20-year history of protecting the most sensitive data for both businesses and consumers globally. For more information, visit comodo.com or our **blog**. You can also follow us on **Twitter** (@ComodoDesktop) or **LinkedIn**.

1255 Broad Street Clifton, NJ 07013 United States Tel : +1.877.712.1309 Tel : +1.888.551.1531 https://www.comodo.com Email: EnterpriseSolutions@Comodo.com